This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

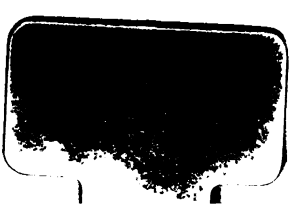
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

6000961 92X



600096192X

HENRY'S

FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY THE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.,

LATE RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

"He shall be brought past the wearisome bitterness of his learning."—LILY.

TWENTY-FIRST EDITION

RIVINGTONS

London, Oxford, and Cambridge

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.

London

1871

305. g 52.

A FEW REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

1. The accent or stress is *always* on the *penultimate* (the last syllable but one), or the *antepenultimate* (the last syllable but two).

2. If the penultimate is long, the stress is upon it; *if short*, it is on *the antepenultimate.*

3. *E* final is never *e mute;* in other words, it always *constitutes a syllable* with a preceding consonant (or consonants). (Thus *ma-re.*)

4. *C* and *G* are *soft* (that is, pronounced like *s*, *j*) respectively before *e* (with *æ*, *œ*), and *i*.

5. *Qu, gu,* are pronounced respectively like *kw, gw* (antīquus = *antikwus;* sanguis = *sangwis*).

PREFACE

TO THE SEVENTEENTH EDITION.

THE present edition of this deservedly popular work is the result of a careful revision of what may be called its mechanical parts. The Vocabularies, and the Latin and English Index, have been much extended by the addition of many words necessary for the learner in writing the exercises. A greater uniformity of reference has been secured. A few rules and observations have been omitted or simplified. Head lines indicating the main contents of each page have been prefixed. Every thing has been done which has suggested itself to the Editor, or has been suggested by friends who use the book in their schools, to make it more useful to the beginner.

At the same time, no pains have been spared to do this without altering in any way the character of the work, or making it inconvenient to use it side by side with copies of the last edition.

PREFACE

TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE title of this little work was suggested by Mrs. Marcet's '*Mary's Grammar.*' The object of it is to enable the pupil to do exercises from the first day of his beginning the study of his Accidence. With this view, I have at first confined myself to the third person singular of a few tenses, and to *one* case of a noun: a plan suggested by an able writer in the Quarterly Journal of Education.

The principles of *imitation* and *frequent repetition* are acted upon, as in a larger work which I have just published; and the principal difficulties of the language (the *accusative* with the *infinitive;* the use of the *participle in dus,* &c.) are, it is hoped, fully explained, and illustrated by a sufficient number of examples.

T. K. A.

To the third edition I have added additional construing lessons on the principal conjunctions, and on the translation of participles.

T. K. A.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LESSON		PAGE
1.	On forming the accusative case	7
2.	On forming the 3rd pers. sing. of three tenses in 1st conjug.	10
3.	——— in 2nd conjug.	11
4.	——— in 3rd conjug.	12
5.	——— in 4th conjug.	13
6.	——— in the four conjugations	14
7.	Adjectives in *us, er*	15
8.	Terminations of the Genitive sing.	17
9.	Genitive of *price*	18
10.	Omission of '*man*,' '*thing*'	20
11.	On the formation of the *perfect*	ib.
12.	Gen. with neut. adjective, &c.	21
13.	Infinitive. Gen. with *est*	23
14.	Acc. Plural	24
15.	Dative and Ablative singular. *Time. Place*	25
16.	Adjectives in *is*	26
17.	On the perfect of the 3rd Conjugation. Verbs whose root ends in *p* or *b*	27
18.	Terminations of the 3rd plural	29
19.	Of the nom. and gen. plural	30
20.	On finding the nom. of third Declension	31
21.	*Nĕ* with imperatives	32
22.	On the perf. of Verbs whose root ends in *c, g,* or *qu*	34
23.	——— *d* or *t*. Dat. and Abl. plur.	35, 36
24.	Root of the perf. with lengthened (and often changed) vowel	37
25.	Abl. of price	39
26.	On distinguishing root of perf. from root of present	40
27.	The personal pronouns. Apposition	41
28.	Nominative after *est*, &c. Some tenses of *esse*	43
29.	The compounds of *esse*	44
30.	Tenses of the *subjunctive*	46
31.	English infinitive expressing a *purpose*	47
32.	*That* expressing a *consequence* after *such, so*, &c. *Summus mons*, &c.	48
33.	Some tenses of *posse*. Interrogative Particles	50
34.	Root of *supine*	52
35.	The Participles	54

LESSON		PAGE
36.	Translation of the participle of the perf. active. The ablative absolute	55
37.	The Gerunds. *Occidĕre* declined	57
38.	The participle in *dus*. *Epistŏla scribenda*	59
39.	Translation of '*is to be* cultivated,' &c. Agent after the partic. in *dus*	61
40.	Verbs that govern the dative	62
41.	Terminations of the *persons*	64
42.	The pronoun '*is*.' Conditional Sentences	65
43.	*Scribendum est mihi*	67
44.	Subj. pres. and imperf. of *esse*	68
45.	*Credendum est Caio*	69
46.	*Colenda est virtus*	71
47.	The Infinitive Mood	73
48.	Passive Forms	75
49.	*Qui, quæ, quod. Mihi creditur*, &c.	76
50.	Deponent Verbs	78
51.	The Comparative and Superlative	80
52.	Prepositions	82
53.	Translation of '*may*,' '*might*'	83
54.	Translation of '*ought*'	85
55.	Ablative denoting the measure of excess or defect. *Quo—eo; quanto—tanto*	87
56.	*Quo*	88
57.	*Pœnitet, pudet*, &c.	89

(ADDITIONAL CONSTRUING LESSONS.)

58.	*Et—et; quum—tum*, &c.	91
59.	*Aut; vel; sive* (*seu*), &c.	92
60.	*At, sed, tamen*, &c. (adversatives)	93
61.	*Nam, igitur*, &c. (causals)	ib.
62.	*Ut*	94
63.	*Nĕ*	95
64.	*Quin*	96
65.	*Quominus*	97
66.	Vereor *ne*: vereor *ut*	98
67.	Interrogatives	99
68.	——— in dependent sentences	100
69.	Double questions	ib.
70.	Conjunctions that always take subj.	101
71—78.	On construing participles by accessory sentences	102—108

Sketch of the Accidence: with *Tables, Vocabularies*, &c.		109
Genders		124
Questions		129
Table of Differences of Idiom		133
Index I. English		135
—— II. Latin		143
Hints for finding root of *present* from root of *perfect*		

HENRY'S

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

Words printed in Italic letters, (thus, *mensa*,) in an exercise, are phrases that are not to be translated word for word; or about which something has been taught that should be remembered.
Numerals *in the line* refer to the sections of the book; *above the line*, and followed by a curve, to the table of questions, pp. 129—132; above the line, but without a curve, to the table of differences, pp. 133, 134. In some few instances the page is referred to, in which case the letter *p.* is placed before the numeral.

Lesson 1.

Cases in Latin and English.

1. WHERE in English we put a preposition before a noun, the Romans often used *no preposition*, but changed the *end* of the word.

2. Thus, '*mens-a*' being '*a table;*' 'mens-*æ*' is 'OF *a table;*' 'mens-*â*,' 'BY *a table*,' and so on.

3. A word so altered is called *a case* of that word; thus *mensæ* is called the genitive *case* of *mensa;* and so on.

4. The unaltered word is said to be in the nominative *case*, though it is not strictly a case.

5. All Latin nouns do not form their cases exactly in the same way.

As there are five principal ways of forming the cases of a noun, nouns are divided into *five* classes, each class being called a *declension.*

6. (*a*) Nouns that end in *a* in the nominative, and make their genitive in *æ*, are of the *first* declension.

(*b*) Nouns that end in *us, er, um*, and make their genitives in *i*, are of the *second* declension.

(*c*) Nouns in *us*, that make their genitive in *ûs*,

and all nouns in *u*, are of the *fourth* declension.

(*d*) Nouns that end in *es*, and make their genitive in *ei*, are of the *fifth* declension.

(*e*) Nouns with any ending not set down as belonging to the other declensions, and those with an ending belonging to some other declension, but with a *genitive* in '*is*,' belong to the *third* declension [a].

7. On the ACCUSATIVE case.

The *accusative* is the case that follows *transitive* verbs, and many *prepositions*.

8. A transitive verb is one that gives no *complete* meaning till some person or thing is mentioned *to whom* or *which* the action was done.

He killed—(killed whom?) the blacksmith.

9. The following are the *accusative* endings of the five declensions for the singular number.

1.	2. 4.	3. 5.
am	um	em.

But ☞ If a noun is *neuter*, its accusative is the same as the nominative [b].

10. These endings are to be added to the *word*, when the endings of the nominative, as set down in

---

[a] TABLE OF THE DECLENSIONS.

Nouns that end in	Genitive		
a	æ	are of the first	Declension.
us, er, um	i	. . second	
us, u	ûs	. . fourth	
es	ei	. . . fifth	
Those with *any other* ending, or with *these* if their gen. end in 'is'	is	. . . third	

[b] In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*.

the table (in p. 8, note *a*), have been thrown away. But to this there are two exceptions:—

(1) The *case-endings* (or '*terminations*') of nouns of the second declension in *er*, are added on thus: *e* is *dropt*, and the termination then added on to the *r*. Thus *ager*, *agr-*, Acc. agr-um. (Sometimes however the *e* is kept; as *puer*, Acc. puer-um.)

(2) The *terminations* of the *third* declension are added on to *some form* that is *generally not found* in the *nominative*. Thus they are added on to *lapid*, the nominative being *lapis*, Gen. *lapid-is*.

(3) The *root*, or form to which the terminations of the *third* declension are to be added, is to be got from the *genitive* by throwing away '*is*.'

Exercise 1.

[Obs. *m.*, *f.*, *n.* stand for *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. *G.* stands for *genitive*.]

11. Determine of what declension each of the following words is, and write down its accusative case.

Vocabulary 1.

		Key-words[c].
Crown, garland,	corōna	(*coronation*).
Island,	insŭla	(*insular*).
Friend,	amīcus, *G.* amici	(*amicable*).
Umpire,	arbĭter, *G.* arbitr-i	(*arbitration*).
Leaf,	folium, *G.* folii	(*foliage*).
Garden,	hortus, *G.* horti	(*hort*iculture).
Law,	lex, *G.* lēgis	(*legal*).
Chariot,	currus, *G.* currûs	(*curricle*).
Face,	facies, *G.* faciēi.	
Dust,	pulvis, *G.* pulvĕr-is	(*pulverize*).
Time,	tempus, *G.* tempŏr-is, *neut.*	(*temporal*).
Oak,	quercus, *G.* quercûs.	
Horn,	cornu, *neut.*	(*cornu*copia).

[c] That is, English words that are derived from the Latin words, and may serve as a *key* to their meaning.

Lesson 2.

12. The *persons* of the Latin verb are distinguished by their *endings* (as think-*est* and think-*s* are in English). But in Latin *all* the persons have different endings; and the pronoun *I, thou,* &c. is generally *left out,* because the *ending* of the verb shows the person meant.

(Verbs whose *infinitives* end in *ārĕ,* as ăm-ārĕ.)

13. By throwing off *ārĕ* you get the root.

14. By adding *at* to the root you get the third person singular of the *present* tense: by adding *abat,* the third person singular of the *imperfect* tense: by adding *abit,* the third person singular of the *future* tense.

(*a*) Am-ārĕ, *to love:* root *am.* am-*ăt, loves; is loving;* or *does love.*	am-*ābăt, was loving.* am-*ābĭt, will love.*

Where in English we use an auxiliary verb, "*will* love," "*may* love," &c., the Romans used endings to the root, as am-*abo, I will love.*

15. Vocabulary 2.

		Key-words.
To administer,	administr-are	(*administration*).
To praise,	laud-are	(*laudatory*).
To swear,	jūr-are	(ad-*jure*).
To plough,	ăr-are	(*arable*).
To dance,	salt-are	(*saltatory*).
To avoid,	vit-are	(in-e-*vitable*).
To build,	ædific-are	(*edification* *).
Government,	imperium, *G.* imperii	(*imperious*).
Husbandman,	agricŏla	(*agriculture*).
Wall,	mūr-us, i	(a *mural* crown †).
Death,	mors, *G.* mort-is	(*mortal*).
Boy,	puer, *G.* puĕri (keeps *e*)—	(*puerile*).
Way; road,	via	(de-*vious*).
To show, *or* point out,	monstr-are	(de-*monstrate*).
Dragon,	draco, *G.* dracōn-is.	
Voice,	vox, *G.* vōc-is	(*vocal*).
Fox,	vulpes, *G.* vulp-is.	
Not,	non (before the verb).	
Girl,	puella, G. puellæ.	

* This word means '*the building* a man *up*' in religious knowledge and practice: *building* on the *foundation of faith.*

† A crown given to the soldier who first mounted the *walls* of a besieged city.

Model sentence. (The accusative is placed *before* the verb.)

16. Servius imperium administrat.
Servius (the) *government* *administers.*

17. ☞ The Latin language has no *article*, that is, no separate word for *a* or *the*.

Exercise 2.

18. [Order: Nom. Acc. Verb.]

Balbus[d] is-building a wall. The boy shows the road. Caius will-build a wall. The boy will-show the road. The husbandman will-plough. Caius was-ploughing. Caius will-praise the boy. The boy will-avoid death. He was-swearing. The boy dances. The boy will-dance. The girl was-dancing. The boy will-avoid the fox. The fox was-avoiding the boy.

☞ When there is a '*not*,' the present with '*does*' must be used: and the auxiliary verb (*does, will, shall,* &c.) must stand before the '*not*,' e. g. '*does not.*'

Puer mur*um* ædificā*bat*. Caius puell*am* laud*at*. Balbus jur*ābit*. Agricŏla ar*at*. Balbus puerum vitā*bat*. Puer mort*em* vitā*bit*. Puer*um* non laud*at*.

laudat, saltabat, laudabat; jurat, ædificabit, vitat, saltabat, vitabit, vitabat; laudabit, saltat, jurat, jurat, monstrabat, arabit; monstrat, ædificat, vitabit.

Lesson 3.

(*Verbs whose infinitive ends in* ērĕ.)

19. Vocabulary 3.

		Key-words.
To fear,	tĭm-ēre	(*timid*).
To see,	vĭd-ēre	(pro-*vide*).
To laugh, / To laugh-at,	rīd-ēre	(de-*ride*).
To hold,	tĕn-ēre	(a *ten*-ant).
To frighten,	terr-ēre	(*terri*-fy).
To teach,	dŏc-ēre	(*doc*-tor).
A Christian,	Christian-us, *G.* i.	

[d] *Balbus* and *Caius* are the Latin names. Gen. *Balbi, Caii.*

20. The *root* is got by throwing off *ēre.*

21. The endings of the third persons singular are,

(*pres.*)	(*imperf.*)	(*fut.*)
et,	ēbat,	ēbit.

Exercise 3.

22. A Christian does not fear death. The boy will fear the dragon. The voice will frighten the boy. The boy was holding the fox. The boy will hold the dragon. Balbus was laughing-at the boy. He was building a wall. Caius will plough. He swears. A Christian will not fear death. Balbus was showing the way.

timet, ridēbit, terrēbat; tenet, videt, vidēbit.
ridēbat, tenēbat, timet; timēbit, terret, timēbat.
Puer vulp*em* non tim*et*. Draco puer*um* terr*ēbit*.
Balbus dracōn*em* ten*ēbat*. Puella v*iam* monstr*ābat*.
Puer puell*am* rid*et*. Caius puer*um* doc*ēbat*.

Lesson 4.

(*Verbs whose infinitive ends in* ĕrĕ.)

23. Vocabulary 4.

		Key-words
To neglect, disregard,	neglĭg-ĕre	(*negligent*).
To shut,	claud-ĕre	(in*clude*).
To write,	scrīb-ĕre	(de-*scribe*).
To slay,	occīd-ĕre.	
To learn,	disc-ĕre	(*disc*iple).
To lead,	dūc-ĕre	(ad-*duce*).
Gate,	porta	(*porter*).
Letter,	epistŏla	(*epistle*).
Slave,	servus	(*servile*).
Master,	dominus	(*domineer*).

24. The root is got by throwing off *ĕre*, and the terminations of the third persons singular are,

(*pres.*)	(*imperf.*)	(*fut.*)
it,	ēbat,	et.

Exercise 4.

25. The slave will shut the gate. The girl was writing a letter. Balbus disregards the voice. The

boy will learn. Caius was learning. The girl will show the garden. The master will praise (his) slave. The slave was showing the way. The slave will not fear death. The slave will plough.

discit, claudit, claudēbat; neglĭget, scribit, scribet, claudet, discēbat, scribet; occīdit, discet, ducit.

Servus domin*um* occīd*it*. Puer disc*ēbat*. Servus port*am* claud*ēbat*. Epistŏl*am* scrib*et*. Jur*ābit*. Puella puer*um* laud*ābat*. Puella mort*em* vit*ābit*. Puer vulp*em* non tim*ēbit*. Christianus mort*em* non tim*et*.

Lesson 5.

(*Verbs whose infinitives end in* īrĕ.)

26. Vocabulary 5.

To hear,	aud-īre	(*audi*-ble).
To feel, To perceive,	sent-īre	(*senti*-ment).
To open, To uncover,	apĕr-īre	(*aperture*).
To bind,	vinc-īre.	
Pain, Sorrow,	dolor, *G.* dolōr-is, *masc.*	(*dolor*-ous).
Head,	caput, *G.* capĭt-is, *neut.*	(*capit*-al).

27. The root is got by throwing away *ire*, and the endings of the third persons singular are,

(*pres.*)	(*imperf.*)	(*fut.*)
it,	iēbat,	iet.

Exercise 5.

28. The boy hears a voice. Balbus will feel pain. The slave uncovers his head. The girl will open the letter. Balbus will bind (his *) head. Caius will hear the voice. Caius was uncovering (his) head. Balbus will write the letter. The master neglects (his) slave.

vinciebat, sentiet, audiet; sentit, audiebat, aperit, audit, aperiebat, sentiet; vincit, audit, sentiebat.

Puer caput vinci*ēbat*. Balbus voc*em* aud*iet*. Caius dolōr*em* vitābit. Puella dolōr*em* senti*ēbat*. Servus

* Not to be translated.

epistŏlam scribēbat. Caius servum laudābat. Servus murum ædifĭcat. Servus currum monstrābit.

Lesson 6.

29. The forms we have now gone through are the four classes (or *conjugations* as they are called) of verbs. They are distinguished by the endings of the infinitive mood.

30. (*a*) Verbs whose infinitives end in *āre*, are of the *first* conjugation, and their favourite vowel is *long a.*

(*b*) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ēre*, are of the *second* conjugation, and their favourite vowel is *long e.*

(*c*) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ĕre*, are of the *third* conjugation, and their favourite vowels are *short e* and *short i.*

(*d*) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *īre*, are of the *fourth* conjugation, and their favourite vowel is *long i.*

31. Terminations of the Infinitive.

	1 conjug. (*favourite vowel* ā)	2 conjug. (*fav. vowel* ē)	3 conjug. (*fav. vowels* ĕ, ĭ)	4 conjug. (*fav. vowel* ī)
Infin. :—	āre	ēre	ĕre	īre

32. Third persons of three tenses.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Present,	ăt	ĕt	ĭt	ĭt
Imperf.,	ābăt	ēbăt	ēbăt	iēbăt
Future,	ābĭt	ēbĭt	ĕt	iĕt

33. Vocabulary 6.

To fight,	pugn-āre	(*pugn*-acious).
To sing,	cant-āre	(*cant*-icle).
To play,	lūd-ĕre	(de-*lude*).
To cry out,	clām-āre	(*clam*-our).
To answer,	respond-ēre	(*respond*).
To sin,	pecc-āre	(*pecc*-ant).
To run,	curr-ĕre	(*curr*-icle).
To hope for,	spēr-āre	(de-*sper*-ate).
Father,	păt-er, *G.* patr-is	(*pater*nal).

Exercise 6.

34. The girl sings. The boy was singing. The slave will play. The slave was crying-out. The boy will answer. Balbus will laugh. The husbandman was not ploughing. Caius is ploughing. Balbus will not answer. The boy will sin. The slave will fight. The master was praising (his) slave. The boy will run. The girl was running.

Servus mortem sperābat. Pater currēbat. Servus pugnābat. Balbus sentiet. Mors Balbum terrēbit. Mors Christianum non terret. Puer vocem audiet. Puer vulpem non timet. Servus dominum occidēbat. Puella peccābat. Servus cantābit. Balbus audit. Pater sentit.

Lesson 7.

(*Adjectives in* us, er.)

35. VOCABULARY 7.

To finish,	fīn-īre.	
Labour,	labor, *G.* labōr-is, *m.*	
Mother,	māter, *G.* matr-is	(*maternal*).
Woman,	mulier, *G.* mulier-is.	
Maid,	ancilla	(*ancillary*).
To bury,	sepĕl-īre	(*sepulture*).
Dead,	mortuus, mortua, mortuum.	(*mortuary* chapel).
Son,	filius, *G.* filii.	(*filial*).
Snake,	anguis, anguis, *m.* (*pronounced* angwis).	
To find,	repĕr-īre	(*repertory*).
Money, Sum-of-money,	pecunia	(*pecuniary*).
Master,	magister, *G.* magistr-i, a master who *teaches*	(*magisterial*).
	domĭn-us, *G.* i, a master who *owns*	(*domineer*).
To rouse-up, *or* awaken,	excĭt-āre	(*excitement*).
Mine,	meus, mea, meum.	
Good,	bonus, bona, bonum.	

His, her, its, theirs, suus, sua, suum; used when the person *whose* the thing is, is the nominative to the verb.

36. ☞ Adjectives in *us, er*, have a *masculine*, a

feminine, and a *neuter* form, and they are declined exactly like substantives.

The masculine ends in *us* or *er*; Gen. *i*. (Decl. ii.)
— feminine —— *a*; G. *æ*. (Decl. i.)
— neuter —— *um*; G. *i*. (Decl. ii.)

Hence the *acc.* of an adjective is got by 9. For instance, if the adjective be *bonus* (whose *fem.* is *bona*; *neut. bonum*), if I want the *acc. masc.* or *neut.*, I take the *acc.* of *bonus* or *bonum* respectively; if I want the *acc. fem.*, I take the *acc.* of *bona*, which is *bonam*.

37. Every noun is *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*[f]; and every adjective must be of the same *case*, *gender*, and *number* as the noun of which it is spoken[g].

38. Mulier ancillam suam excĭtat.
The woman maid her awakens.

Obs. Except with these little words, *meus*, *suus*, &c. the adjective *generally* stands *before* its substantive. '*Bonus* puer,' a good boy.

[Ancillam suam:—*suam* is put in the *accusative feminine*, because *ancillam* (the noun of which it is spoken) is in the *accusative feminine*.]

---

[f] See 9, note b.

[g] TABLE by which the gender of a substantive is to be determined. For exceptions, see pp. 124, 125, 126.

I. DECL. all *feminine*, except POETA (poet), and other designations of *men*.

II. DECL. { us, er, *masculine*: except, humus, domus (*fem.*), and a few more. / um, *neuter*.

IV. DECL. { us, *masculine*, except manus (fem.), and a few more. / u, *neuter*.

V. DECL. { es, *fem.* (DIES masculine, but sometimes *fem.* in singular.)

III. DECL. Masc. term.	Fem. term.	Neut. term.
er, or, os, es *increasing*, that is, having in the genitive *a syllable more* than in the nominative. o, when not *do*, *go*, *io*.	do, go, io, as, is, aus, x, es *not increasing*, s *after a consonant*.	*c*, *a*, *t*, *e*, *l*, *n*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*. (But ūs with *long u*, in words of more than one syll. is *fem.*)

Exercise 7.

39. The father buries (his*) dead son. The husbandman finds a snake. (My) friend does not hear my voice. A slave was shutting the gate. The master is teaching the boy. The master will rouse up his slave. Caius disregards the law. The boy will finish his labour. The girl was finishing her labour. The master will show his garden. The father will praise (his) good son.

Pater filium suum docēbat. Agricŏla anguem non timēbit. Caius legem neglĭget. Christiānus pecuniam neglĭgit. Mortuum agricŏlam sepeliet. Pater meus vocem meam non neglĭget.

Lesson 8.

40. The following are the *genitive* terminations of the five declensions:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
æ	i	is	ûs	ei.

☞ (1) In the Genitive of the fourth *ûs* is for *u-is*.
(2) In the Genitive of the fifth, the *e* is long when *it follows a vowel; short* when it does not. (Faciēi, fidēi.)

41. Vocabulary 8.

Through,	per, governs accusative.	
To walk,	ambŭlare	(per-*ambulate*).
To call,	vocare	(*vocative*).
Poet,	poēta, *m.*	
To overturn, To pull-down,	evertĕre (the first is the literal meaning: the second the word *we* should use in English).	
House,	dom-us, ūs, *f.*	(*domestic*).
Body,	corpŭs, corpŏr-is, *n.*	(*corporal* punishment).
Daughter,	fili-a, æ, *f.*	(*filial*).
Great,	magnus	(*magnitude*).
Little, Small,	parvus.	
City, town,	urbs, urb-is, *f.*	(*urbane*).
He himself,	ips-e, a, um.	
Queen,	regīna.	
King,	rex, *G.* rēg-is	(*regal*).

* Words in parenthesis ( ) are not to be translated.

Sceptre,	sceptrum.	
To tear-to-pieces,	dilaniāre.	
An ass,	asĭnus, *G.* asĭni	(*asin*ine).
To avenge,	vindĭcāre	(*vindict*ive).
Lion,	leo, *G.* leōnis.	

41*. Ipse Sullæ domum evertit.
He-himself Sulla's house pulls-down.

OBS. ☞ The governed genitive stands first, unless the governing noun is emphatic. When the governing noun is to stand before *its genitive*, it will have an accent after it (Thus; festival').

Exercise 8.

42. The slave shuts the gate of the city. He-himself will not pull down his friend's house. The father will not disregard the voice of his son. The father is burying the body of (his) dead son. The boy was pointing-out the snake's body. My mother was praising the poet's daughter. The good boy was walking through the city. My father will call the husbandman's daughter. The poet was holding the queen's crown.

Filius patr*is* su*i* mort*em* vindic*ābit*. Pater fili*i* su*i* voc*em* non negl*ĭget*. Leo asĭn*um* dilani*at*. Servus domĭn*i* su*i* mort*em* vindic*ābat*. Reg*is* sceptrum vid*ēbit*. Agricŏla per urb*em* ambul*abit*.

Lesson 9.

Say the termination of the tenses (32). Give the accusative endings (9). Give the genitive endings (40).

43. VOCABULARY 9.

At nothing,	nihĭli (the genitive of *nihĭlum*, which is only used in some particular phrases).	
To value,	æstĭmāre	(*estimation*).
At a great (price), At a high (price),	magni †.	
At a little (price), At a low (price),	parvi †.	
To think little of,	parvi æstĭmare.	
Labour,	lăbor, *G.* labōr-is.	
Wise,	sapiens, sapientis	(*sapient*).
True, real,	vērus, vera, verum	(*verily*).
Virtue,	virtūs, *G.* virtūt-is, *f.*	

† These are genitives, *price* being understood.

44. With some words the *price* or *value* is put in the *genitive*.

Sapiens	virtūtem	*magni*	æstĭmat.
The wise man	*virtue*	*at a great* (price)	*values.*

45. Magna regis corona, *the king's great crown.*
Magna boni regis corona, *the good king's great crown.*
Imitate this order; *adj.—gen.—subst.*

Exercise 9.

46. He disregards his slave's great labour. He sees a great snake. The boy was avoiding the snake's great body. He is avoiding the great snake's great body. The master was rousing up his slave. He will feel great sorrow. The poet will feel real sorrow. The father will not neglect the sorrow of his son. Caius values true virtue *at a great* (price). The master *thinks little of* the labour of his slave. The father will value my labour *at a great* (price).

Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvi æstĭmat.* Pater labōrem meum *magni æstĭmat.* Leo asĭni corpus dilaniabat. Mater laudabat filiam. Vulpes leōnem timet. Boni pueri caput aperiebat. Dominus servi sui epistŏlam aperiet. Magnam urbis portam claudebat. Servus puerum vocabit.

Lesson 10.

47. VOCABULARY 10.

Very great, greatest,	maxĭmus.	
At a very great (price), }	maxĭmi.	
At a very high (price), }		
At a very low (price),	minimi.	
Avarice,	avaritia.	
Unlearned,	indoctus.	
Avaricious; greedy,	avārus.	
Wisdom,	sapientia.	
Impious,	impius.	
Money, sum of money,	pecunia	(*pecuniary*).

48. Avārus *maxĭmi*
The avaricious (man) *at a very great* (price)

æstĭmat pecuniam.
values money.

When the noun meant is *man, woman,* or *thing,* it is often left out in Latin. If *man* is meant, the adjective must, of course, be *masculine;* if *woman, feminine;* if *thing, neuter.*

Exercise 10.

(Ask questions from 1—4, p. 129.)

49. The avaricious (man) values virtue at-a-low-price (thinks little of virtue)[3]. He was pulling down the avaricious (man's) house. He will avenge the death of the wise (man). The wise (man) values virtue at-a-very-great (price). The impious (man) will fear death. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. The poet will build a great house. The poet's daughter was walking through the great city. The unlearned (man) laughs-at the poet. The true poet will laugh-at the unlearned (man).

Christiānus pecuni*am* parvi æstimābit[3]. Impii dom*um* evert*et*. Indoctus sapient*iam parvi æstĭmat*. Caius sapient*iam* laudābit. Amīci laud*at* sapient*iam*. Christiānus avarit*iam* vitābit. Mater bonam filiam laudabat. Magnam regis corōnam videbit. Leo dilaniabit asĭnum. Puer magnam quercum monstrabit. Servus domĭni sui hortum monstrabat.

Lesson 11.

On the formation of the Perfect.

50. The perfect has the same ending in all the conjugations; but this one ending is added on to a

particular root[1], that is altered in various ways from that of the present.

51. In the *first, second,* and *fourth* conjugations, the root of the perfect is generally formed by adding *āv, ŭ,* and *īv,* respectively, to the root of the present.

Thus from	am-āre	mon-ēre	aud-īre
(*Root of present*)	am-	mon-	aud-
(*Root of perfect*)	amāv-	monŭ-	audīv-

52. Terminations of the third person singular, in the *Perfect, Pluperfect,* and *Future perfect* of the active voice.

Perfect,	it,	to be added to the *root of the perfect.*
Pluperfect,	ĕrat,	
Future perfect,	ĕrit,	

53. Find the *roots of the perfect* for cant-āre, terr-ēre, doc-ēre, sepel-īre.

Exercise 11.

54. The boy had heard a voice. The slave will have shown the road. The lion has torn-in-pieces the ass. The slave has avoided pain. Caius had praised his slave. The fox had frightened the boy. The master has taught the boy. The Christian did not fear death. He had valued wisdom at-a-very-low price (minimi).

Juravĕrat. Agricŏla aravĕrit. Vulpes terruĕrit puerum. Servus speravit mortem. Puella peccavĕrat. Servus cantabit. Pater mortuum filium sepelivĕrat. Magnam poētæ sapientiam parvi æstimavit. Veram virtutem magni æstimavĕrat.

Lesson 12.

55. Vocabulary 11.

Bad,	mălus. Evil, malum (*neut. adj. used as subst.*).
Something,	alĭquid (*n.*).

---

[1] By a *root* is here meant that *part of a word which is found unchanged in all the cases* or *tenses* spoken of.

How much,	quantus, quanta, quantum	(*quantity*).
Pleasure,	voluptas, *G.* voluptātis	(*voluptuary*).
Lose,	amittĕre.	
Unwilling,	invītus (to be translated, '*unwillingly*').	
Figure,	figūra.	
To have,	habēre.	(*habit*).
Stability,	stabilĭtas.	
To condemn,	damnāre	(*damnation*).
Unlearned,	indoctus.	
Industry,	industria.	

56. Figūra *nihil* habet *stabilitatis.*
The figure nothing has of stability (has no stability).

Alĭquid tempŏris { something of time. (*Lat.*) / (*some time.*) (*Eng.*)

Multum boni[k] { much of good. (*Lat.*) / (*much good.*) (*Eng.*)

Quantum voluptātis[1] { how much of pleasure. (*Lat.*) / (*how much pleasure.*) (*Eng.*)

57. (*Eng.*) He does it *unwillingly.*
(*Lat.*) He *unwilling* does it.

Exercise 12. [Questions 1—5.]

Find, by 51, the *root of perfect* from hab-ēre, vit-āre, dilani-āre, laud-āre.

58. The boy will lose *some time.* *How much pleasure* does the unlearned man lose! The figure had (*perf.*) *no stability.* He avoided *much evil.* The lion had torn-to-pieces the ass. The father praised his son. My father values industry very highly[2].

Servus vi*am* monstr-av-*ĕrat.* Puer mort*em* tim-u-*it.* Domĭnus serv*um* su*um* excit-av-*ĕrat.* Alĭquid tempŏr*is* invītus amitt*et.* Christiānus avaritiam damn*at.* Quan-

---

[k] ☞ *Boni, mali,* &c. (the genitives of *bonum, malum*) are here used as substantives.

[1] ☞ *Neuter adjectives* are often followed by a *genitive* case.
These adjectives are generally such as relate to *quantity; indefinite numerals,* &c.

tum hab*et* voluptāt*is* sapientia! Avaritia nihil hab*et* verǽ voluptāt*is*. Quantum voluptāt*is* hab-u-*ĕrit!*

Lesson 13. [Questions 1—6.]

59. VOCABULARY 12.

To err,	errare.	
Natural-to-man,	humānus	(*human*).
Nobody,	nēmo, *G.* nemĭn-is.	
To offend-against; to wrong, / To break (a law, one's word, &c.)	viŏlare	(*violate*).
Fidelity; faith; *one's* word, honour, &c.,	fides, fidĕi.	
To keep; to observe,	servāre	(pre-*serve*).
(One's) country,	patrĭa, *G.* æ, f.	(*patriotism*).
It is,	est.	
Citizen,	cīvis, *G.* cīvis	(*civil*).
To command,	impĕrare	(*imperative*).
Easy,	facilis, m. f.; facile, n.	(*facility*).
Disgraceful,	turpis, m. f.; turpe, n.	(*turpitude*).
Law,	lex, legis, f.	(*legis*lation).

60. *Humanum* est errāre.
Natural-to-man it-is to err [n].

Christiāni est nemĭnem violāre.

The part / The duty *of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*

61. To lie is [o] disgraceful. (*Lat.*)
It is disgraceful to lie. (*Eng.*)

62. After '*it is*,' such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark,* is untranslated.

In turning Latin into English, when a genitive follows *est* (*erat, fuit,* &c.), such a substantive as *mark, duty, business, part,* must be supplied.

---

[n] ☞ An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the *nominative* to the verb; and the adjective that agrees with it is then in the *neuter* gender.

[o] ☞ When an infinitive mood is the nominative case to the sentence, in English we put '*it*' before the verb '*is*.'

This '*it*,' which represents, as it were, the coming sentence, must not be translated into Latin.

It is the part
It is the duty
It is the business
It is a mark
} of a wise man, &c. (*Eng.*)
It is of a wise man . . . . . (*Lat.*)

Exercise 13.

63. It is a great *thing* not to fear death. It is a little *thing* not to fear a fox. The slave had kept his word. It is the slave's *business* to shut the gate of the city. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. It is natural to man to value money *at-a-high-price*[2]. It is a mark of an unlearned man to value wisdom *at-a-low-price*[3].

Turpe est poētæ domum evertere. Humanum est peccare. *Patris* est filium suum sepelire. *Regis* est imperare. *Servi* est viam monstrare. Pater filium docuĕrat. Puella clamavĕrat. Mater filiam suam laudavĕrat. Caius cantavĕrit. Agricŏla juravit. Impii (62) est virtutem *parvi* æstimare. Boni (62) est fidem servare. Impii est fidem violare.

Lesson 14.

64. For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns the accusative plural ends in *s*; for neuters in *ă*.

RULE. To get the *acc. plur.* from *acc. sing.*

(1) For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns, turn *um* of the 2nd into *os:* in the other declensions, turn *m* into *s*.

(2) For neuters add *a* to the *root*[q].

Hence the terminations of the *acc. plur.* are,

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
ās,	ōs,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.

Obs. The vowel before *s* is long. *Acc. plur.* of all *neuters ends in* ă.

---

q Sometimes *ia* must be added; for which rules will be given below.

Exercise 14.

65. It is disgraceful to break (one's) word. It is (the duty) of a Christian to keep (his) word. It is (the part) of a Christian, not to offend-against the laws of his country. The good citizen will observe the laws of his country. The master has taught the boys. It is natural-to-man to avoid pain. Balbus will break his word. The fox had frightened the boys. He disregards the labours of his slave.

Pater meus fidem servavĕrat. Indocti est (62) sapientiam *parvi æstimāre*[3]. Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. CAIUS fidem suam non servāvit. Christiani est nemĭnem violāre. Neminem violavit.

Lesson 15.

66. The remaining cases of the singular:

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Dative	æ	ō	ī	uī	eī
Ablative	ā	ō	ĕ*	ū	ē

67. The *Dative* is to be construed by TO or FOR.

The *Ablative* is to be construed by WITH, BY, FROM.

The Ablative sometimes relates to *time*, and must then be construed by AT or IN: when it relates to *place*, by AT or FROM †.

68. VOCABULARY 13.

Hand,	măn-us, ûs, f.	(*manual*).
To labour, / To be in trouble,	lăbōrare.	
To appease,	plācāre	(*placable*).
Mind,	anim-us, i	(magn-*animi*-ty).
Gift,	donum	(*donative*).

Exercise 15.

The thing *with which* is put in the ablative.

69. The boy will show the road *to* the husbandman. The girl will open the letter *with* her-own hand. The

---

* Unless you are told to use *i*, which is sometimes the ablative form.

† *From* after a verb of *motion*.

boy will hear voices. Death will not terrify Christians. The slave will shut the gates *for* the king. Death frightens the impious. It is natural-to-man to fear death. He will appease the boy *with* a gift. He has appeased the boy's mind. He will have appeased the boy's mind *with* a gift.

Agricŏlæ est laborāre. Puer discet. Servus domini vocem timēbit. Christiāni est virtūtem laudāre. Caii anĭmum dono placavĕrit. Iram meam dono placavĕrat. Puella cantābit. Puer ludēbat.

Lesson 16.

70. ☞ Adjectives ending in *is*, have Gen. *is*, and are therefore of the *third*. They are *masculine* and *feminine*. Their neuter form is *e*, Gen. *is*, &c.; and the ablative singular is *i**.

71. VOCABULARY 14.

Rome,	Rōma.	
Carthage,	Carthāgo, Carthagĭn-is, f.	
The space-of-two-years,	biennium	(*biennial*).
Winter,	hiems, hiĕm-is, f.	(*hiemation*).
To sleep,	dormīre	(*dor*-mouse).
Bear,	ursus, i.	
Cave,	antrum.	
One,	unus, una, unum[r]	(*unit*).
To rest,	quiescĕre	(*quiescent*).
To chastise,	castīgāre	(*castigation*).
To remain,	mănēre	(*mansion*).
To live,	vīvĕre	(re-*vive*).
Earth,	terra	(*terrestrial*).
Faithful,	fidēlis	(*fidelity*).
Year,	ann-us, i	(*annual*).

72. Romæ. *at Rome.* Tarenti. *at Tarentum.* Tibŭre[s]. *at Tibur.*

---

* A table of the terminations of an adj. in '*is*' is given at p. 112 (16, 1).

[r] This word, with some others, has this peculiarity: *unus, una*, and *unum*, all make their *Gen. unīus*, and their *Dat. uni*, instead of the regular Genitives and Datives of the first and second declensions.

[s] ☞ If the name of a town *at which* any thing is done, be of *the first* or *second* declension, and *singular* number, it is put in the *genitive*; if not, in the *ablative*.

Caius	*annum*	*unum*[t]	*Cortōnæ*	vixit.
Caius	*year*	*one*	*at Cortona*	*lived.*
Hiĕme	ursus	in	antro	dormit.
In winter	*the bear*	*in*	*a cave*	*sleeps.*

73. *Obs.* The preposition in English is not to be translated before *the name of a town,* or a noun of *time*

(*a*) Before a noun of time, consider, whether it tells you *when* the thing was (or, is to be) done; or *how long* it lasted (or is to last[t]).

Exercise 16.

74. *In-winter* the earth rests. My father was living *at-Rome.* Balbus is-remaining *at-Carthage.* It is the duty[7] of a good citizen to remain at-Rome. In winter the bear will remain in (its) cave. He will remain at-Rome for-the-space-of-two-years. He has kept his word unwillingly (57). It is the duty[7] of a father to chastise his son. The slave is walking in the garden. He is remaining at-Tibur unwillingly. In-the-winter, he will play in the garden.

Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābit. Pater filium castigavĕrat. Puer in antro dormiēbat. Lex Christiāna avaritiam damnavĕrat. Pater filium castigavĕrit. Biennium *Romæ* manēbit. Facĭle est, pueri animum dono placare. Puella in horto ludēbat.

Lesson 17.

(*On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in* p *or* b.)

75. In these verbs the root of the *perfect* may generally be got from the root of the *present* by adding *s*.

☞ But *bs* must be written *ps*.

---

[t] ☞ Time *when* is put in the *ablative;* time *how-long* in the *accusative.*

76. EXAMPLES: Root of pres. *rēp;* root of perf. *reps.*
Root of pres. *nūb;* root of perf. *nups* (not *nubs*).

77. VOCABULARY 15.

To write,	scrībĕre	(*scribe*).
To marry (of *a female*),	nūbĕre	(*nuptials* [u]).
To pluck; to card; to carp at,	carpĕre.	
Wool,	lana.	
Flower,	flos, flōris	(*florist*).
Grape,	uva	(*uvula*).
Whole,	totus: *with G.* totīus; D. toti. See *unus*, p. 111 (8, 10).	(*total*).
Letter,	epistŏla	(*epistolary*).

a. Nubĕre '*to marry*' is followed by the *dative*, not by the *accusative*.

b. A case of *suus* must be construed { *his, her, its, their;* (or) *his own, her own, its own, their own;* according as the nominative is a '*he*,' a '*she*,' an '*it*, or a '*they*.'

He wrote it / *She* wrote it } manu *suâ* { with *his* own hand. / with *her* own hand.

Exercise 17.

78. The boy was writing a letter. The girl wrote a letter. The slave had written a letter. (It) is easy (60, note *n*) to write a letter. The girl will marry Caius (77, a). The girl was carding wool. It is the duty [7] of a Christian to observe the laws of his country. The girl had plucked a flower. The boy will pluck the grape. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter *.

Sapientis est virtūtem [v] magni æstimāre. Epistŏlam Romæ scripsit. Facĭle est, lanam carpĕre. Quantum habet voluptātis industria! Puella epistŏlam *suâ* manu scripsit. Caius epistŏlam *suâ* manu scribēbat.

---

[u] This word properly means '*to veil*:' hence 'to put on a *bridal* veil;' 'to *marry*.' It governs the *dative*, as meaning 'to veil *for* a person.'

* In what case is *whole winter* to be put? (p. 27, note *t*.)

[v] From *virtus, virtutis*.

Lesson 18.

Terminations of the third plural.

79. The *third plural* of a verb may be got from the *third singular* by changing *t* into *nt*.

(*a*) But this rule does not hold good of the termination '*it*,' which must be changed thus:

'*it*' must be changed { in the *fourth conj.* into *iunt*. / in the *perfect* into . . *ērunt*. / in '*erit*' into . . . *int*. / in other cases into . . *unt**.

Exercise 18.

80. Construe:

(1) Am*at*, am*ant*: mon*et*, mon*ent*: reg*it*, reg*unt*: aud*it*, aud*iunt*: amav*it*, amav*ērunt*.

(2) Find the *third* person plural corresponding to each of the following forms:

Am*ābat*; mon*ēbit*; reg*et*; rex*ĕrit*; aud*iet*; plor*ābit*; rex*it* (*perf.*); clamav*ĕrit*, clam*ābit*; scrips*it*, aud*iet*.

(3) Translate:

They will command. They have walked in the garden. They have written a letter. They were praising the faithful slave. They had praised the slave's fidelity. They will have sung. They will remain at Rome the whole winter. They will fear the lion. They will have chastised the slave. They will pull down the avaricious man's house. They will value money at-a-low-price. They will lose some time. Wisdom has much pleasure. They will wrong nobody. They have wronged nobody. It is the duty of a Christian to avoid avarice. They will appease the girl's anger. They were writing letters.

---

* Thus, sepĕl-*it*, sepĕl-*iunt*.
stet-*it*, stet-*ērunt*.
stet-*ĕrit*, stet-*ĕrint*.
reg-*it*, reg-*unt*.

Lesson 19.

81. Plural terminations of substantives and adjectives:

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Nom.	æ,	i,	ēs,	ūs,	ēs.
Gen.	ārum,	ōrum,	um, *or* ium *,	uum,	ērum.

82. VOCABULARY 16.

Greatness,	magnitudo, G. dinis, fem.	(*magnitude*).
A leaf,	folium, G. folii	(*foliage*).
To retain,	retinēre	(*retinue*).
To fall down,	decĭd-ĕre	(*decid*uous).
Autumn,	auctumnus, G. i.	
The country,	rus [w], G. rūris	(*rural*).
To fly (out),	e-vŏl-āre (e, *out:* volare, *to fly*)	(*vol*atile).
From; out of;	e *or* ex, governing the *ablative:*	
In,	in, governing the *abl.*	

Determine by the Table, given at p. 16, note *g*, the *genders* of *dolor, auctumnus, rūs, urbs.*

☞ '*In*,' when it means '*into*,' governs the accusative.

Exercise 19.

83. The husbandmen are building a wall. The boys will show the road. Christians will not fear death. The citizens will pull down Sulla's house. Wise (men) value true greatness of mind *very highly* [2]. The unlearned value wisdom at-a-low-price. My friends will not disregard my sorrow. The leaves fall down *in autumn* [12]. The slaves will avenge the death of their master. The boys will hear a voice. The slaves will show the gardens. They will appease the anger of the husbandmen with a gift.

Impii mortem timēbunt. *Christiāni est* [7] pecuniam *parvi æstimāre* [3]. Fidem suam *invīti* [5] serv-av-ērunt. Rūs [y] ex urbe evolābunt. *Invītus* [5] domi (168) manē-

---

* *Um* is to be used when you are not told to put *ium*.

[w] *Patria* is the *country* of which we are citizens; *rus* is '*the country*,' as opposed to '*the town*.'

[y] *Into the country*, by a rule to be given presently.

bat. Puĕrum in urbe sepel-iv-ērunt. Patres filios suos docuĕrant. Puellæ clamavērunt. Puĕri vulpem non timēbunt.

Lesson 20.

On finding the nominative of the third declension *from any other case.*

84. The most common way of all is given in the following Rule:

(1) Find the *root*[x], and add *s* to it.

a) For *cs, gs,* you must write *x;* and if a *t* sound (that is, *t* or *d*) or *r* stand before *s*, throw it away.
b) If the letters before *s* are *nt*, sometimes *t* only is thrown away: sometimes both consonants.
c) Besides this a *short i* in the last syllable should be changed into *e*.

(2) Another way is to throw away the *last letter* of the root.

a) This applies principally to *n* (sometimes to *r, l*).
b) An *i* before *n* should be changed into *o*, as *consuetudĭn*-em (consuetudŏ) consuetūdo.

(3) A third way is to add *is, es,* or (for *neuters*) *e* to the root.

(4) Sometimes '*ĕr*,' '*ŏr*,' as the last letters of a root, should be changed into '*ŭs;*' and '*it*' into '*ut*[a].'

---

[x] Sometimes the *root* is itself the *nominative*.

[a] EXAMPLES.—From *ped-es* we get *ped-s* = *pes* [by (1) *a*]; from *frŭtic-is, frutics* = *frutix* = *frutex: civitāt-em, civĭtat-s, civĭtās: animant-em, animant-s, anĭmans: elĕphant-is, elĕphant-s, elĕphas* [(1) *b*]. By (2) *longitudĭn-em, longitūdi, longitūdo: farris, farr. far: felle, fell, fel.* By (3) *nub-em, nub-es; ret-i, ret-e.* By (4) *latĕr-is, latŭs; corpŏr-is, corpŭs; capĭt-is, capŭt.*

85. VOCABULARY 17.

	ROOT.	NOM.	
A flock,	grĕg,	grex, m.	(*greg*-arious).
A shrub,	frutĭc,	frutex, f.	
A state,	cīvĭtāt	cīvĭtās, f.	(*city*).
An elephant	elephant	ĕlĕphas, m.	
Custom,	consuetudin	consuetūdo, f.	
Honey,	mell	mel, n.	(*melli*-fluous).
Side,	lătĕr	latus, n.	(*lateral*).
Head,	căpĭt	caput, n.	(*capital*)
Body,	corpŏr	corpus, n.	(*corporal*).
Cloud,	nūb	nubes, f.	

Exercise 20.

86. The boys will not fear the elephant. The slave will show the shrub. Balbus had praised my custom. He feels a pain in his side (*say*, of his side). The boy will feel a pain in his head (*say*, of his head). The lion will not fear the elephant. The slave had shown the shrub in his master's garden. He will retain his father's custom. The state will observe its laws. The husbandman had shown his flocks. He will laugh-at the flock of unlearned men. My father feared the cloud.

Caius leges civitātis violavĕrit. Christiani est[7] nemĭnem violare. Servus mortui elephantis corpus puero monstrābat. Puella epistŏlam suâ manu scripsit. Facile est lanam carpĕre. Biennium Carthagĭne manēbunt. Domĭni servos fidēles vindicavĕrant. Dominōrum est[7] fidēles servos laudāre. Patris est filium suum docēre. Figūræ nihil[4] habent stabilitatis. Hieme ursi in antro dormiunt. Biennium Romæ manēbit. Christianus nemĭnem violabit. Fidēles servi dominum suum vindicabunt.

Lesson 21.

87. The *Imperative* may be got from the *infinitive* by throwing away *re* (*amā*, *monē*, *regĕ*, *audī*).

88. *'Not'* with *imperatives* is *nē*,
A *'non'* is hateful then to see.

Crabrones *nē* irrīta.
Hornets do-not irritate (Do not irritate hornets).

89. VOCABULARY 18.

It is,	est.	
Wasp,	vespa.	
To irritate,	irrītāre.	
Hornet,	crabr-o, ōnis.	
Never,	nunquam.	
Useful, profitable,	ūtĭl-is	(*utility*).

Exercise 21.

[The *'do'* before *'not'* is only the *auxiliary* verb belonging to the following verb.]

90. Do-not irritate wasps. He has *unwillingly* (57) irritated a wasp. The boys will irritate the wasps. Do not pull-down the house. Do-not chastise the slave. The boys will lose *some time*[4]. The figure will have *no stability*[4]. Do not break your word. Wise (men) will condemn avarice. The boys will hear a voice. Do not shut the gates of the city. Do not irritate your master. The boy will fear the hornet. The hornets will irritate the fox.

Patriæ tuæ leges nē viŏla. Veram anĭmi* magnitudĭnem laudābunt. *Christiāni est*[7] fidem suam servāre. Turpe est, patriæ suæ leges violāre. Poētas nē irrīta. *Christiani est*[7] nemĭnem irritare. Invītus saltavĕrat. Portas urbis *invitus* claudēbat. *Invitus* peccavit. Humanum est peccare. Ne pecca. Nunquam est utile peccare.

---

* Observe the place of the governed genitive, between the adj and substantive.

Lesson 22.

On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a k sound (that is, in *c*, *g*, or *qu*).

91. The common way is, to add *s* to the root of the *present;* remembering that,

☞ Any *k* sound with *s* = [c] *x* [that is, for *cs*, *gs*, or *qus*, write *x*].

Thus from *cing-ĕre*, *tĕg-ĕre*, *dīc-ĕre*, *cŏqu-ĕre* [d], we get for the roots of the perfect,

(cing-s)	(teg-s)	(dīc-s)	(coqu-s)
cinx,	*tex,*	*dix,*	*cox.*

92. VOCABULARY 19.

Attack,	oppugnare.	
Greatest,	summus; properly *highest*, but the general word for *greatest*, when *qualities* are spoken of.	
To surround,	cing-ĕre	(*cincture*).
To cover,	tĕg-ĕre	(in-*tegu*-ment).
To say,	dīc-ĕre	(*diction*).
To cook; bake; ripen,	cŏqu-ĕre	(de-*coction*).
Fault, blame,	culpa	(*culpable*).
Lie,	mendācium	(*mendacious*).
Cloak,	pallium	(to *palliate* an offence; *i. e.* to *cloak* it).
Folly,	stultitia	(*stultify*).
Food,	cibus.	
The sun,	sol, sōl-is, *m.*	(*solar*).
To fill,	complēre	(*complement*).
All,	omnis: cunctus (the latter word means '*all taken together*')	(*omni*-potent).
To illuminate,	illustrāre	(*illustrate*).
Light,	lux, lūc-is	(*lucid*).
River,	flūmen, flumĭn-is. What *gender?* [See page 16, note *g*.]	
Assumed-appearance; pretence,	simulatio, *G.* simulatiōnis	(dis-*simulation*).
Whole,	totus, a, um: but G. *totīus*, D. *toti*. In other cases, regular. [See page 111, 10.]	(*total*).
Prudence,	prudentia.	

[c] This mark means '*equals*,' or, '*is the same as*.'

[d] Qu = *kw*; pronounce *cokwĕre*.

93. Sol cuncta suâ luce illustrat.
The sun all (things) *with his light illuminates.*

94. ☞ *'Thing' 'things,'* are often not expressed in Latin: the adjective must then be put in the *neuter*.

Exercise 22.

95. He surrounds his head with a garland. He had surrounded the city with a wall. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. The boy had said nothing. The girl had cooked the food. Do not cover (your) fault with a lie. The slave has said many (things). The sun fills all (things) with its light. The assumed-appearance of folly covered great wisdom. It is the business[7] of the slave to cook the food for his master. It is never useful to lose time. How much[4] pleasure has he had?

Sol *cuncta* suâ luce illustravĕrat. Christiāni[7] non est, mendacio culpam tegĕre. Puĕri dixērunt. Flumen urbem cingit. *Totam hiĕmem*[12] ursus in antro dormiēbat. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio tegēbat. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiæ texĕrat. Hannibal Saguntum oppugnabat. Turpe est peccare. Biennium Romæ manebunt. Carthagine *inviti* manēbant.

Lesson 23.

On finding the root of the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a t sound (that is, *d* or *t*).

96. Here too the root of the perfect is generally got from the root of the present by adding *s*.

The *t* sound must be thrown away before this *s*, and the preceding vowel, *if short*, made long.

Claud-o,	claud-s,	*claus.*
Divĭd-o,	divid-s,	*divīs.*

97. The remaining cases of the plural of substantives.

In the plur. the *dative* and *ablative* are alike.

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Dat. } Abl.	īs,	ĭbŭs,	ēbŭs.	(In the *fourth* it is sometimes ŭbus.)	

98. VOCABULARY 20.

Cave,	antrum.	
To divide,	divĭd-ĕre.	
Part,	pars, partis. Gender? (p. 16, *g*.)	
Three,	tres, *neut.* tria (declined regularly: gen. *trium*).	
A man,	vir *, G. viri (declined like a noun of second).	
To accuse,	accūsāre.	
Theft,	furtum	(*furtive*).
Bribery,	ambĭtus, G. ûs.	(*ambition*).
To acquit,	absolvĕre	(*absolve; absolution*).
Beauty,	pulchritudo, dinis, *f*.	
Treachery,	proditio, G. ōnis.	
To death (condemned),	may be translated by *capĭtis* (*'of the head'*). [100, 101.]	
Into,	in, *with the* accusative.	
Because,	quia.	
Always,	semper.	
Ability,	ingenium	(*ingenious*).
Space of three years,	triennium	(*triennial*).
Singular (remarkable),	eximi-us, a, um.	

99.	Puer	eximiâ	pulchritudĭne.
	A boy	*of singular*	*beauty.*
	Caium	proditiōnis [e]	accūsant.
	Caius	*of treachery*	they accuse.

* *Homo*, G. *hominis*, and *vir* are both *'man:'* but *homo* is *'man'* as opposed to *other* animals; that is, *'a human being:'* whereas *'vir'* is *'man'* as opposed to *'woman.'*

When *'men'* means *'human beings,' 'men'* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homĭnes*.

When *'man'* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *'homo,'* because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.

When *'man'* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *'vir,'* because *man* is *superior* to *woman*.

[e] ☞ Verbs of *accusing, acquitting*, and *condemning*, take a *genitive* of the *charge*. As transitive verbs they, of course, take an accusative of the person accused.

100. Obs. Where we *describe* a person or thing by a *substantive and adjective* governed by '*of*,' the Romans used either the *genitive* or the *ablative*.

101. (*Eng.*) To condemn a person *to death*.
To condemn a person *of the head*[f] (*capĭtis*).

Exercise 23.

102. The slave has shut the gates of the city. Balbus had divided all (*neut. plur.*) (the things) into three parts. He will divide all (*neut. plur.*) into three parts with his (own) hand. Do-*not* divide the food. Balbus, a man *of the greatest virtue*, has praised the fidelity of the slave. The sun was illuminating all (things) with his light. He will accuse Balbus of theft. Virtue is the highest wisdom. They have written the letters with their own hands. The queen was writing a letter with her own hand. He had covered his face with a cloak. It is always disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romæ [11] vivit. Balbum ambĭtûs accusavĕrant. *Quantum cibi* amittunt! Balbum proditiōnis absolvent. Balbum *capĭtis* damnābunt. Hiĕme (72) ursi in antris dormiunt. Triennium (72, note *t*) Romæ manēbit. Caium ne accūsa. Invitus *Caium* accusavit. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavĕrat. Portas urbis clausĕrat. Balbi est, *omnia* (93, 94) in tres partes divīdĕre. Facĭle est saltare. Nunquam utĭle est peccare, quia semper est turpe.

Lesson 24.

Root of the perfect with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.

103. Other verbs form the root of the perfect by *lengthening* the *vowel* of the present: as *ĕd*-ere, *ēd*.

---

[f] We may suppose that it was originally '*to condemn a person the loss* of the head,' or rather '*to a punishment* of the head.'

104. If the vowel of the present is *ă*, the root of the perf. will have *ē*. Thus *căp*-ere, *cēp*.

105. Several of these verbs drop an *n* or *m* before the final mute.

Thus frang-ĕre, frăg, frēg (*break*).
rump-ĕre, rup, rūp (*burst; break through*).
vinc-ĕre, vic, vīc (*conquer*).

106. VOCABULARY 21.

Buy,	ĕm-ĕre, r. ēm	(pre-*emption*).
Take, Receive,	căp-ere, r. cēp, from capio, p. 61 *x*	(*captive*).
Arm,	brāchium.	
Treaty,	fœdus, fœderis (neut.) 84, 4	(con-*feder*-ate).
Chain,	vincŭlum.	
Prison,	carcer (carceris, 84, *z*)	(in-*carcer*-ate).
A Gaul,	Gallus.	
Enemy,	hostis, G. hostis	(*hostile*).
From,	(after *receive, capere*), ex *with abl.*	
To break (one's) word, &c.,	fidem *fallere*.	

Exercise 24.

107. Caius had broken his arm. The Gauls had broken-through the treaty. They had broken-through the treaty. It is disgraceful to break-through a treaty. Cæsar conquered the Gauls. It is not easy to conquer the Gauls. He had appeased Balbus with the greatest prudence. They will break-through their chains. They had broken-through the chains of their prison. It is easy to break (one's) arm. They are losing much[4] money. He was losing much pleasure. They will condemn Balbus to death. He had conquered his enemies. Balbus has broken his arm at Rome.

Nunquam utile est fœdus rumpĕre. Nunquam utĭle est fidem fallĕre, quia semper est turpe. Facĭle est puerorum anĭmos donis placare. Turpe est fœdĕra negligĕre. Galli negligēbant fœdĕra. Utile est omnĭbus laborare. Nemo semper labōrat. Caius brachium suum Carthagĭne frēgĕrat. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis texit. Quantum[4] mellis ēmērunt! Quantum voluptatis ceperunt! Multum voluptatis ex meo dolōre cēpĕrant.

Lesson 25.

107*. The letter R will be used to denote root of the present; r, root of the perfect; ρ, root of the supine.

108. VOCABULARY 22.

Hope,	spes, spei.	
Colour,	color, G. colōr-is. Gender?	
An estate,	fundus.	
Large,	grandis	(*grand*).
Price,	pretium	(*appreciate*).
Immense; huge,	ingens, G. ingent-is.	
Conquered,	victus, a, um	(*victory*, &c.).
To dwell,	habĭtāre	(*habitation*).
To reign,	regnāre.	
Sardis, *or* Sardes,	Sardes (a *plural* noun), G. Sardium, &c.	
Thebes,	Thēbæ, G. Thebārum : *plur.* noun.	
Victory,	victōria.	
Nightingale,	luscinia.	
Much,	multus.	
Many,	multi	(*multitude*).
To flourish,	florēre, r. floru.	
Often,	sæpe.	
Peace,	pax, pācis	(*pac*-ific).
Athens,	Athenæ, Athenarum, used only in the plural.	

109. Spem *pretio* (110) non emo.
Hope for a price not do I buy.

110. ☞ After a verb of *buying*, '*for*' may be considered a *sign* of the ablative.

That is to say, '*for*' is to be untranslated; and the noun that expresses *the price*, put in the ablative.

Exercise 25.

[In what case is the price *for which* put?] (110)

111. He has bought the estate *for* a large sum-of-money. *The conquered* often buy peace for an immense sum of money. He had dwelt *many years* [12] *at Athens* [11]. Crœsus reigned *at Sardis*. He has bought a victory *with* (that is, *for*) much blood. He will have dwelt *many years at Rome*. The nightingale changes (her) colour *in the autumn* [12]. *It* is impious not to love (one's) parents. Caius had broken his arm. Cæsar has conquered the Gauls.

[When is the place *where* put in the *gen.*? when in the *abl.*? (72, note *s*.)

Thebis Pindărus floruit. *Multos annos* Romæ habitavĕrant. Impium est, leges patriæ violāre. *Invītus* legem violāvit. Invīti leges violaverant. Balbum capitis damnavērunt. Biennium Romæ habitabunt. Patriæ tuæ leges ne viŏla. Caium proditionis accusabunt.

Lesson 26.

112. Since, in the *third* conjugation, both the *present* and the *perfect* have their third person in '*it*,' it is well to learn how to distinguish a third person of the *perfect* from a third person of the *present*.

113. *a*) If '*it*' has *s* or *x* before it, the tense is the *perfect*.

b) If '*it*' has *u* or *v* before it, and the word is of more than two syllables, the tense is very likely to be the perfect [k].

c) If the two first *consonants* of the root are *the same*, the tense is the perfect.

(Thus '*tet*endit' is the perfect.)

d) If the root is of one syllable, and has a *long vowel*, the tense is *very often* the *perfect*.

114. Vocabulary 23.

Some verbs form root of perfect by prefixing a syllable, which is called reduplication, that is, *redoubling*.

Bite,	mord-ēre, r. (107*) mŏmord	(re-*morse*).
Hang (neut.),	pend-ēre, r. pĕpend	(sus-*pend*).
Shear, shave,	tond-ēre, r. tŏtond	(*tonsure*).
Change,	mutare	(*mutability*).

Shoulder,	humĕrus, G. i.	
Beard,	barba	(*barber*).
Sheep,	ovis, G. ovis.	
Flay,	de-glūb-ĕre (see 75).	
Shepherd,	past-or, G. ōris	(*pastor*).
Wolf,	lŭpus, G. i.	
From,	ab, governing the ablative.	
Arrow,	sagitta.	
Dog,	canis, G. canis	(*canine*).

Exercise 26.

115. The wolf had bitten the sheep. The shepherd will shear his sheep. A shepherd does not shear his sheep in the winter. The wolves have bitten my dog. Caius will shave (his) beard. The cloak was hanging

---

[k] This is *certain* in the case of *āv-it*, *īv-it*. But *arguit*, *congruit*, *imbuit*, *statuit*, &c., are of the *present*.

from (his) shoulder. The dog has bitten the wolf. They wrote the letter at Carthage. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. The girls will walk in the garden. The queen was walking through the city. They have surrounded the city with walls. They have *unwillingly* offended-against the laws of their country.

Boni pastōris[7] est tondēre oves, non deglubĕre. Sagittæ ab humĕro pependērunt. Malus pastor deglupsit oves, non totondit. Pastōres agricŏlas risērunt. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordĕrit. Boni canis[7] non est oves mordēre. Tonde oves; ne deglūbe. Servus portas urbis clausĕrit. Puĕri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. Lusciniæ colōrem mutabunt. Auctumno lusciniæ colorem suum mutavĕrint.

Lesson 27.

116. Personal Pronouns.

	N.	G.	D. Ac.Ab.	N.A.	G.	D.Abl.
I,	ĕgo,	meī,	mĭhi, mē,	nōs,	nostrum *or* nostri,	nōbīs,
Thou,	tū,	tuī,	tĭbi, tē,	vōs,	vestrum *or* vestri,	vōbīs.
Him, her, it, Them[l],	(*none*)	suī,	sĭbi, sē,	(*Plural the same as the singular.*)		

☞ *Myself; thyself; himself, herself, itself; themselves,* are also expressed (respectively) by these pronouns.

117. 'He gave *him* a book' means 'he gave a book *to him.*'

'He is like *him*' means 'he is like *to him.*'

118. ☞ After verbs of *giving, paying, costing, &c.* put in '*to*' before the *accusative* of the person, and translate it in Latin by the *dative.*

119. ☞ Adjectives of *likeness* take the dative[m] after them.

This means, that what seems the *accusative* after '*like*' must be translated into Latin by the *dative.*

---

[l] *Him, her, it, them,* are not translated by *sui, &c.,* unless they stand for the *same person* or *thing* that the *nominative* (or other *principal noun*) of the sentence stands for.

[m] But often the *genitive.* 'Similis *mei*' means, he is like me: *character;* 'similis *mihi,*' that he is like me in *face.*

120. Vocabulary 24.

To give,	R. (107[a]) d-ăre, r. dĕd. (This verb has *ă* in the last syllable but one.)	
To sell,	R. vend-ĕre, r. vendĭd.	
To stand; cost,	st-āre, r. stĕt	(*station*).
Gold,	aurum	(*auriferous*).
Silver,	argentum.	
Blood,	sanguis, sanguĭn-is, *m.*	(*sanguinary*).
Roman,	Rōmānus.	
Beast,	bellua (of *large* beasts; *elephants, whales*, &c.).	
Chain,	vincŭlum.	
To finish,	finīre.	
Wicked,	imprŏbus, a, um.	
Orator,	orātor, G. tōris.	
Oration,	oratio, G. tionis, *f.*	
Twenty,	viginti, *indeclinable.*	
A talent,	talentum.	
Hippopotămus,	hippopotămus.	
The Nile,	Nilus.	

121. Isocrătes *orātor*[n] unam oratiōnem
Isocrates the orator one oration
viginti talentis vendĭdit.
for twenty talents sold.
(The orator Isocrates sold one oration *for twenty talents.*)

Exercise 27.

122. The Hippopotămus, a great beast, dwells in the Nile. Caius, a wicked *man* (98, note), will sell his country for gold. He has sold his country for gold. *How much*[4] silver had he given his slave? Victory cost the Romans (118) much blood[o]. Do not sell your honour for gold. It is *the part*[7] of a Christian *to think little of*[3] gold and silver. Balbus had burst the chains of his prison. It is the part of a Christian to praise the good.

Improbōrum est[7], patriam auro vendĕre. Anĭmus carcĕris sui vincŭla rumpēbat. Fidem suam auro

[n] When two nouns are spoken of the *same thing*, the second is put in the *same case* as the first.

The second is then said to be '*in apposition*' to the first. Hence '*apposition*' is when the *second noun* is a *name*, or *title*, or *description* of the preceding ones.

[o] Remember that the *blood* was the *price* paid.

vendidērunt. Turpe est, fidem suam auro vendĕre. *Quantum* tibi *argenti* [4] dedĕrat*? Pastor ovem tondēbat. Agricŏla labōrem finivĕrat.

Lesson 28.

Tenses of the Verb 'esse,' *to be.*

		Sing.	*Plur.*
123.	Present,	est,	sunt.
	Imperfect,	ĕrăt,	erant.
	Future,	ĕrĭt,	ĕrunt.

Root of perfect *fu;* and therefore the tenses with root of perfect formed regularly, fu*it*, fu*erat*, fu*ĕrit*, fu*isset*.

124. The verb '*to be*' takes a nominative (of either a *substantive* or an *adjective*) after it.

☞ An adjective *after* the verb agrees with the nominative *before* the verb.

125. VOCABULARY 25.

Happy,	felix [r], G. felīc-is beātus	(*felicity*). (the *beatitudes*).
Round,	rotundus, a, um	(*rotundity*).
Contented,	contentus [s], governs the *abl.*	
Worthy,	dignus [s], governs *abl.*	(*dignity*).
Unworthy,	indignus [s], governs *abl.*	(*indignity*).
Endued,	prædĭtus [s].	
Relying on,	frētus [s].	
Strength,	vīres, G. virium, &c. Plural of *vis*.	
A little,	parvum, *neut. adj.* used as a substantive.	
Star,	stella	(con*stellation*).
Free,	liber [s], libera, liberum	(*liberty*).
Never,	nunquam.	
Very many,	plurimi, æ, a.	
To do,	facere, p. 61, note *x*.	
To reign,	regnare.	

---

* Remember that in a *question*, the auxiliary verb (*is, does*, &c.) stands before the nominative case.

[r] *Beātus* relates more to *true, inward* happiness than *felix*, which means *successful in one's undertakings*, &c.

[s] ☞ Dignus, indignus, prædĭtus, contentus, fretus, liber, &c. *govern* the ablative; that is, the abl. follows them without a preposition: so that the English '*with*,' '*from*,' '*of*,' &c., must not be translated after them.

126. Terra est rotunda.
The earth is round.

(*Rotunda* nom. fem. to agree with *terra*, 124.)

Plurĭmæ stellæ soles sunt.
Very many stars suns are (are suns).

Exercise 28.

127. No-one is always happy. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. Caius, a man (98) endued with the greatest virtue, praised my fidelity. Caius is not free from blame. Balbus, a man unworthy *of* life, does *no good*[4] (thing). Balbus, relying *on* his strength, will burst the chains of his prison. It is unworthy of a Christian to praise the bad. The slaves are not free from blame. Christians are contented with a little. The boys have covered their faults with lies.

127*. (What does *luce* come from?—See 84, (1) a.)

Virtus parvo contenta est. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! Caius, homo vitâ indignus, patriam auro vendĭdit. Patris mei servus laude dignus est. Improborum est[7] malos laudare. Tarquinius Romæ regnavit. Arbor florebat. Caium boni omnes laudabant. Balbus multâ laude florebat.

Lesson 29.

128. ☞ The compounds of *esse* (except *posse*) govern the dative.

129. VOCABULARY 26.

(Compounds of *esse*; governing the *dative*.)

To do good; to be serviceable, } prod-esse[t], (r.) profu.

---

[t] These forms follow the conjugation of *esse* exactly: but *prodesse* drops its *d* before those tenses of *esse* that begin with a consonant. Thus *pro-sunt*: not *prod-sunt*.

To be prejudicial,	ob-esse [t], (r.) obfu.
To be engaged in,	inter-esse [t], (r.) interfu.
As many as possible,	quam [u] plurĭmi, æ, a.
The greatest possible,	quam [u] maxĭmus, a, um.
The greatest *he can*, or *could*,	quam [u] maxĭmus, a, um.
To raise (forces),	compărāre.
Forces,	copiæ, ārum, plur.
State,	civĭtas, G. tātis.
Battle,	prœlium.
Anger,	ira.
Human,	humānus.
Race,	genŭs, G. genĕr-is. *What gender?* (*generic*).
Becomes,	fit, followed by the nominative.
By chance,	casu (abl. of casus, casûs) (*casual*).
To be wise,	sapere, sapio (*sapient*).

Exercise 29.

130. Balbus was engaged in the battle. *It is the part of a Christian* ' to do-good to *as many as possible.* Cæsar raises the *greatest forces he can.* Anger has cost the human race (118) much blood. Anger has often been prejudicial to states. Very-many men are unworthy (125, note *s*) of life. The Christian will do-good to *as many as possible.* Very-many cities were raising forces. Many states, relying on their strength, are raising forces. They condemned Caius, a man unworthy of life. The conquered will dwell at Sardes. Peace cost me a great sum-of-money. The son will avenge his father's blood.

Cæsar *quam maxĭmas* copias comparavĕrat. Caius, vir summo ingenio prædĭtus, Romæ habĭtat. Servus meus prœlio interfuit. Fides plurĭmis profuit. Nemi fit casu bonus. Christianorum est ' avaritiam damnare Caius multis prœliis interfuĕrat.

---

[t] See note in preceding page.

[u] How *quam* gives the meaning of '*as possible*' to a superlative, is explained in the '*Differences of Idiom*,' number 9.

Lesson 30.

Subjunctive Mood.

131.	1.	2.	3.	4.
PRESENT (R.[v])	ĕt,	ĕăt,	ăt,	ĭăt.
IMPERFECT (R.)	ārĕt,	ērĕt,	ĕrĕt,	īrĕt*.
Perfect (r.[v])	ĕrĭt.			
Pluperfect (r.)	issĕt.			

The third plural is formed regularly from all these forms by the insertion of an *n* before the *t*.

132. The *subjunctive present* in a principal sentence is an *imperative*, or expresses a *wish*.

Hence, after *ut* (*that*) the subjunctive present is to be construed, '*he, &c. may —:*' without *ut*, it must be '*let him —, &c.*' or '*may he —, &c.*'

133. The *subjunctive present* used as an *imperative* takes *nē* for '*not*' (ne putet, *do not let him think*).

Exercise 30.

134. *Write down:* That[w] he may shut. He would have shut. He would sleep. That he might irritate. That he may hear. That he may break. He may have broken. He would have burst. He would have divided.

Construe: Floreat. Ut florēret. Floruisset. Profuisset. Irrītet. Ut irrītet. Irritavisset. Divisisset. Ut cingĕret. Cingat. Scribat. Ut scribat. Scripsisset. Ut scribĕret. Plācet pueri animum. Ut filium suum sepelīret. Sepeliat filium. Iram meam placavissent. Servus nē claudat portas. Docet pueros, ut sapĕre discant.

---

[v] R. means *root of present.*
r.——— *root of perfect.*

* Obs. The 3rd *sing.* of the *imperfect subjunctive* may be formed from the *infinitive* by adding *t*.

[w] '*Ut*' is '*that.*'

Lesson 31.

135. ☞ The infinitive in English often expresses *a purpose:* but the infinitive in Latin *never* does.

(*Eng.*) I am come *to see* you.
(*Lat.*) I am come *that* I may see you.
(*Eng.*) I came *to see* you.
(*Lat.*) I came *that* I *might see* you.

136. ☞ The English infin. expressing a *purpose* may be translated by '*ut*' with the subjunctive.

137. The *imperfect* subjunctive must be used when the verb is of a *past* tense[x]; the *present* follows the other tenses.

138. ☞ The 'perfect with *have*' (or 'perfect definite,' which denotes that something *has been done* in a *still present* period of time) is considered a *present tense,* and followed by the *present subjunctive*[y].

Obs. Neuter verbs of *motion* form their perfect definite *active* with '*am*:' so that '*He is come*' = 'He *has come,*' and is followed by *pres. subjunctive*[z].

139. Vocabulary 27.

	R.	r.	
To eat,	ĕd-ĕre,	ēd (103)	(*edible*).
To come,	vĕn-īre,	vēn (103)	(ad-*vent*).
To learn,	disc-ĕre,	*dĭ*-dĭc* (113, *c*)	(*disciple*).
To read,	lĕg-ere,	lēg (103)	(*legible*).

140. (1) Vĕnit *ut* portas *claudat.*
He is coming that *the gates* he may shut.
(*He is coming* to shut *the gates.*)

(2) Vēnit *ut* portas claudĕret.
He came that *the gates* he might shut.
(*He came* to shut *the gates.*)

(3) Vēnit *ut* portas claudat.
He is come that *the gates* he may shut.
(*He is come* to shut *the gates.*)

---

x That is of the *imperfect, perfect,* or *pluperfect.*

y It is just so in English:
I *write,* or *am writing,* / I *shall write,* / I *have written,* } *that* I *may,* &c.
I *was writing,* / I *wrote,* / I *had written,* } *that* I *might,* &c.

z So too '*was come*' is the pluperf.

* The syllable prefixed is called a *reduplication.*

Exercise 31.

[What tense is 'he *was come?*' 138, z.]

141. He will come *to surround* the boy's head with a garland. He was come *to surround* the girl's head with a garland. He came *to irritate* the wasps. They were come *to pull-down* Sulla's house. He *was come* to give *me* an estate. They had come *to condemn* me *to death*[g]. Do not shut the gate. He was come *to raise the greatest forces he could*[g]. Let the girls sing. Let the boys learn[a] to read. The boy has learnt[a] to play.

[Construe *ut* with the *subjunctive* by the *infinitive*.]

Veniat servus, *ut* portas urbis *claudat*. Vēnit[b], ut *quam maximas*[g] copias compăret. Lĕgit, ut discat. Edit, ut vivat. Edit, ut vivĕret. Non edunt, ut vivant; sed vivunt, ut edant. *Romæ* plurĭmi vivunt, ut edant. Veniat Caius, ut epistŏlam suâ manu scribat. Cantet puella. Ludant pueri. Vēnerat Caius, ut Balbi animum donis placaret. Quiescant servi. Nemo quiescat. Vēnit, ut me audiat. Venērunt, ut me audiant. Venerunt, ut te audirent. Edunt, ut vitam conservent.

Lesson 32.

142. After '*such*,' '*so*,' 'of *such* a kind,' &c. '*that*' must be translated by '*ut*,' and the verb after '*that*' must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin, though in English it is in the *indicative*.

143. Vocabulary 28.

So great,	tantus	(*tanta*mount).
Mountain,	mons, mont-is, *m.*	
Highest,	summus	(*summit*).

---

[a] *Disco* is followed by the *infinitive* (not by *ut* with the subjunctive).

[b] Obs. When the *present* subjunctive follows a *perfect*, the perfect must be translated by '*has*,' or, if it is a verb of motion, by '*is*;' because the use of a present proves it to be the *perfect definite*. See 137.

Top of, Middle, *or* midst of,	summus, medius, { *in agreement with* their subst. }	(*mediæval*).
Snow,	nix, nĭv-is. *Gender?*	
Alps,	Alpes, Alpium, &c.	
Cold,	frīg-ŭs, ŏris. *Gender?*	(*frigid*).
Not-yet,	nondum.	
Fish,	piscis, *G.* pisc-is, *m.*	(*piscatory*).
Pavement,	pavīmentum.	
White,	candidus, a, um	(*candid*).
Wine,	vinum	(*vinous*).
Preserve,	conservare	(*conservative*).
To swim,	nātāre.	
To melt,	liquesc-ĕre, licu	(*liquid*).

144. In summis Alpĭbus *tantum est* frīgus,
On the top of the Alps *so great* is the cold,

ut nix ibi nunquam *liquescat*.
that the snow there never *melts*.

145. (*Eng.*) On the *top* of the mountain.
(*Lat.*) On the highest mountain. (In *summo* monte.)

(*Eng.*) In the middle (*or* midst) of the waters.
(*Lat.*) In the *middle* waters. (In *mediis* aquis.)

Exercise 32.

146. *On the top of the mountain*[11] the snow never melts. *On the top of the Alps* the snows never melt. The cold is so-great, that the snow is not-yet melted[c]. The fish is swimming in *the middle of the water*. Boys swim *on the top of the waters*. The pavement is swimming with wine. Let the slave come[d]. He was eating, to preserve his life. He will swim, to preserve his life. May the snows melt! The boy is singing on the top of the oak. The boys will dance on the top of the mountain.

Obs. The *subjunctive* after *ut* must be rendered in English by the indicative, when a *tantus* stands in the former clause.

In *summis montĭbus* tantum erat frigus, ut nix ibĭ nunquam liquescĕret. Vēnit, ut patriam auro vendat.

---

[c] '*Is melted*,' like '*is come*,' is the *perf. active*.

[d] The *third person* of the *present* subjunctive is used as an *imperative*.

Improbi homines patriam auro vendidērunt. In summo monte tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nondum licuĕrit[e]. Tanta est pueri industria, ut multa discat. Nix est candida. Vēnit, ut patriæ suæ leges violaret. Avis in summâ arbŏre cantabat.

Lesson 33.

147. Subjunctive of *esse*.

Present, *sit*.—Imperfect, *esset*. (*Fuĕrit, fuisset*, regular from *fu*.)

148. The verb '*can*,' '*am able*,' is made up of an old adjective '*potis*,' meaning '*able*,' and the verb '*to be*:' but the two words were run together into *one* with some change.

149. To get the third persons of '*to be able*' from '*to be*.'

☞ Place *pot* before the *third* persons of *to be*, throwing away the *f* from those that begin with that letter; and change *t* into *s* before another *s*, shortening *potess* into *poss*. We thus get (from the forms in 123) *potest, possunt: potĕrat: potĕrit, potĕrunt:* and *potu* (for *potfu*) for the root of the *perfect*.

The subjunctive will be *possit, posset*, &c. Infin. *posse*.

150. Some verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound, throw away the *k* sound before *s*:

sparg-ĕre, spars.
merg-ĕre, mers.

151. Vocabulary 29.

Nest,	nīdus.		
Bird,	avis, *G.* avis		(*aviary*).
Seed,	sēmen, semĭnis.	*Gender?*	(*disseminate*).
Dangerous,	pericul-ōsus *		(*perilous*).
Danger,	perīcŭlum		(*peril*).
Victim,	victĭma.		
Altar,	āra.		

---

[e] What was said of the *present* and *imperfect* subjunctive, may be extended to the *perfect* and *pluperfect*.

☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the subjunctive are the regular attendants of the *past tenses*.

* Adjectives in *ōsus* mean *full of* what the substantive they are derived from denotes: as, periculosus, *full of danger*.

Sprinkle,	adspergo, r. adspers	(*asperse*).
Priest,	sacerdo-s, ōtis	(*sacerdotal*).
	R. r.	
To plunge into (*trans.*),	immerg-ĕre, immers.	
Scatter,	sparg-ĕre, spars	(*sparse*).
To build (said of a *nest*),	con-stru-ĕre, con-strux [f]	(con*strue*).

152. The particles *nĕ* (e *short*) and *num* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun, or adverb of *place, time,* or *manner,* one of these particles should be put in.

Nĕ should always *follow* and be *joined to* a word. If there is a '*not*' in the sentence, it should be joined to the '*non*' (nonnĕ).

153. Nonn*ĕ* scribit? *Is not he writing?*
Scribit*nĕ* Caius? *Is Caius writing?*
Num scribit Caius? *Is Caius writing?* (No.)
Arare potest. *He can plough.*
Potest*nĕ* arare? *Can he plough?*

Obs. '*Num*' is used when the answer '*no*' is expected; so that '*num* scribit Caius?' means, 'Caius is not writing, is he?'

Exercise 33.

When the answer '*no*' is expected, it will be added thus: [No.]

☞ The '*to*' of the infin. is omitted in English after *can, may, might,* &c., and *see, hear, feel, bid, dare, make* [g].

154. Does he live to eat? [No.] Does not he eat to live? The husbandman has scattered seeds. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters.* Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters.* They *are come* [29] to condemn [28] you *to death* [g]. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters* [10]? [No.] The boy's industry is so great, that he can learn all things. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? Are you shearing the sheep?

[In construing, omit the *nĕ* or *num,* but make the sentence a *question.*]

[f] This seems a very irregular perfect; probably the verb was *struĕre* originally.

[g] Hence the verb that follows *can, could,* &c. is in the *infinitive* mood in Latin.

[In a *question*, the *auxiliary verb* must stand before the nominative case: and the form '*do—does*,' '*did*,' must be used for the *present* and *perfect* respectively. (The *perfect definite* must still be translated by *have, has.*)]

Caius se in flumen immersit. Galli manus in aquam immersĕrant. Periculōsum est, *hiĕme* [12] se in flumen immergĕre. Puer se in flumen immergat [30]. *Agricolārum est* ' semĭna auctumno [9]*b* spargĕre. Nonnĕ in *summis Alpĭbus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? Avis *in summâ quercu* nidum construxĕrat. Scripsitnĕ Caius? Sacerdos victimarum sanguĭne aram adspersit. Num rex portas urbis suâ manu claudet? Nonnĕ boni est pastōris ' tondĕre oves, non deglubĕre?

Lesson 34.

Root of Supine.

155. There are two *supines* in Latin: one in *um*, and another in *u*.

156. ☞ The supine in *um* follows verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose:* it must be Englished by the *present infinitive active* (amātum, *to love*).

157. The supine in *u* follows some *adjectives*, and is Englished by the *present infinitive passive.*

But it may be Englished by the *infin. act.* when that gives better English [h]. Both supines are *really* active: *factum* is '(*for*) doing:' *factu*, 'in doing.'

These forms very seldom occur: but they are given in grammars and dictionaries, because two of the participles are formed from the *root of the supine.*

158. The root of the supine (which will be marked *by* ρ.) ends in *t*; sometimes in *s*.

159. In the *first, second,* and *fourth* conjugations, the *root of the supine* is regularly obtained by adding

---

[h] See 163.

1. 2. 4.
āt, *ĭt*, *īt*, to the roots of the present.
(amāt) (monĭt) (audīt)

In the *third*, *t* is added to the root: but sometimes *s* (especially to the *t* sounds).

160. Obs. Any *p* sound before *t* is *pt* (or *pt* = *pt* or *bt*).
Any *k* sound before *t* is *ct* (or *ct* = *ct*, *gt*, or *qut*).
Hence *scrib*-tum, *reg*-tum, must be written *scriptum*, *rectum*. Remember that *d*, and sometimes *g*, will be thrown away before *s*. (See 96, 150.)

161. Vocabulary 30.

To forage (supine),	pabulātum.
To fetch water (supine),	aquātum.
To lie down,	cubĭtum (supine from *cubāre*).
To go to bed; to go to roost,	cubĭtum īre.
To send,	mitt-ĕre, r. mīs (*for* mit-s); *ρ*. miss (re-*mit*).
To go,	īre [k].
To go a hunting,	venātum īre (venātum, *supine*, to hunt) (*venison*).
To go away,	ab-īre [k], r. abi.
To return,	red-īre [k], r. redi.
Hen,	gallīna.
Evening,	vesp-er, *G*. ĕris (*vespers*).
Legion,	legi-o, *G*. ōnis. *Gender?*
Fourth,	quartus.
Pleasant,	jūcundus.
To seek, to sue for,	petere, r. petīv-, *ρ*. petīt (*petition*).
Ambassador,	legat-us, i (*legate*).

162. Mittit legātos pacem *petītum*.
He sends ambassadors peace to sue-for (to sue for peace).

163. (*Eng.*) It is hard *to say* [1].
(*Lat.*) It is hard (*in*) *saying* (difficĭle est *dictu*).

---

[k] *Ire* is of the *fourth*, but with some irregularities: r. īv.: *ρ*. ĭt.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
Pres.	it, eunt.	eat.	The participle, which will be wanted presently, is *iens*, *G*. *euntis*, &c.
Imperf.	ībat.	īret.	
Fut.	ībit.		Gerunds, *eundi*, &c.

The compounds *ăb-īre*, *rĕd-īre*, are conjugated exactly in the same way (prefixing *ab*, *red*, to these forms), but they generally drop *v* from the root of the perf. (*redi-ĕrit*, *redi-isset*, &c.; not *redivĕrit*, *redivisset*).

[1] Hence after *hard*, *pleasant*, &c., *the active infinitive* is to be translated by the *supine* in *u*.

Exercise 34.

164. The hens *go to roost* in the evening. The boy had gone a hunting. Cæsar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. Has not Cæsar sent the fourth legion *to fetch water?* Are not the boys gone [29] a hunting? Cæsar has not-yet returned to *Rome* [m]. Cæsar had returned from Geneva to Rome. Balbus will go-away in the evening.

[Form the supine in u from aud-īre: fac-ĕre (159).]

Nonnĕ cubĭtum eunt gallĭnæ vespĕri? Timĭda avis *in summâ quercu* nidum construēbat. Plato Tarentum vēnit. Servum Athēnas misĕrat. Caium Athēnas mittat [30]. Jucundum est audītu. Difficile est factu (163). Nonnĕ sacerdōtes aram sanguĭne adspersērunt? Sacerdōtis est, aras omnes victimārum sanguĭne adspergĕre. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram sanguine adspergat.

Lesson 35.

PARTICIPLES.

Active.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
165. Present (R.)	ans,	ens,	ens,	iens.

Perfect (none).

Future (root of supine = ρ.) ūrus.

Passive.

Perfect (ρ.) us.

Future (or 'participle of *necessity*;' R.).

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus.

---

[m] ☞ After a verb *of motion*, 'to' is never a sign of the *dative*, but is to be translated by *ad*. But '*ad*' is omitted before the names of *towns* and *small islands*.

When the place is a *town* or *small island*, the place *to* which is put in the accusative; the place *from* which, in the ablative.

165*. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.

The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed, en, t,* &c. (shock*ed*, take*n*, hur*t*).

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired:* a crime *to be abhorred.*)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by '*about to* (write);' or, '*going to* (write).'

166. VOCABULARY 31.

R.	r.	ρ.	
frang,	frēg,	fract	(for fragt).
sparg,	spars,	spars	(for spargs).
adsperg,	adspers,	adspers	(for adspergs).
claud,	claus,	claus	(for clauds).
immerg,	immers,	immers	(for immergs).
rump,	rūp,	rupt.	

Exercise [n] 35.

167. Loving. Surrounding. Being surrounded. Being broken. (A stick) to be broken. About to break. Dwelling. Living. To be dwelt in. About to dwell. Going to break. About to scatter. About to burst the chains of his prison. An altar to be surrounded with flowers. A boy to be loved. Going to disregard. Going to praise.

Immersūrus. Porta claudenda. Semĭna spargenda. Agricŏla sparsūrus semĭna. Violatūrus legem. Claudens portas. Porta clausa. Semĭna sparsa. Sacerdos aram adspersūrus.

Lesson 36.

168. VOCABULARY 32.

(Words that are construed like *proper names* of *towns*. 72, note *s*.)

On the ground,	hŭmi.
At home,	dŏmi, fem.

---

[n] First find root of supine (1) by adding *t* to *cing* (159, 160), and to *frag* (see 105, 159, and 160); (2) by adding *s* to *merg, sparg, claud* (see 159); and (3) from the roots of *viol-āre, habit-āre* (by 159).

At my house,	dŏmi meæ (At his own house, *domi suæ*).
On service; in the field,	militiæ.
Home (to *or* towards home),	dŏmum (after verbs of *motion*).
From home,	dŏmo.
In the country,	rūri, *abl.* (or, rure).
Into the country,	rūs (*neut. acc.*).
From the country,	rūre.

Both[o] (adv.),	et; properly *and*.
Neither,	neque, *or* nec, \ *neque* is rather to be *pre-*
Nor,	neque, *or* nec, / *ferred* before a vowel.
To sing,	can-ĕre (r. cĕcĭn; ρ. cant).

169. (*Eng.*) Cæsar *having conquered* his enemies, &c.
(*Lat.*) Cæsar, *when* he *had conquered* his enemies, &c.
(*or*) Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, &c.
(*a*) Cæsar, *quum vicisset* hostes, &c.
(*b*) (*or*) Cæsar, *victis hostĭbus*, &c.

170. A substantive and participle are said to be put *absolutely*, when they are not *governed* by the *verb*, or any other word in the sentence.

☞ In Latin, words *put absolutely* are in the *ablative*.

(This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

171. Obs. ☞ The want of a participle in Latin for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense.

Exercise 36.

172. Balbus *having crowned*[p] the boy's head with a garland, went away. The slave *having shut*[q] the gate of the city, is going *to bed*[11]. Cæsar having conquered his enemies (169, *b*) will return to *Rome*. The leaves are falling down *on the ground*. Cæsar is remaining at his-own-house. Balbus was with me[r]

---

[o] Thus instead of '*both* Caius *and* Balbus,' the Romans said '*and* Caius *and* Balbus' (*et* Caius *et* Balbus).

[p] Translate by '*when he had crowned*.'

[q] Translate by '*the gate of the city being shut*.'

[r] Obs. *Cum*, '*with*,' is written *after*, and *joined to*, the *ablatives* of the personal pronouns (*mēcum*, *tēcum*, *nobiscum*, &c.: not *cum me* nor *me cum*).

both at home and on-service. Balbus had lived *many years* in the country.

(What is *mecum* made up of?)

Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit. Folia nondum deciděrant. Puer *Romam* mittendus est. Balbus nec[8] domi nec militiæ mecum fuit. Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit. Caius nondum rure rediit. Et Cæsar et Balbus Romam rediērunt. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingĕret. Sacerdos, quum aras sanguine adspersisset, abiit.

[Observe: in construing *an ablative absolute*, the substantive must be placed first *without a preposition*, and the participle (if the Latin participle is that of the *perf. pass.*) is to be that used with '*being*:' as, *Gallis victis*, the Gauls being conquered.

But having so translated it, you may turn the *participle* into that of the *perf. act.* (with '*having*') *governing* the substantive, whenever this change improves your sentence without altering its meaning: as, *Gallis victis*, having conquered the Gauls.]

Fracto puĕri *brachio*, abit. Alexander, victo Darīo, rediit. Avis, constructo in *summâ quercu* nido, canit. *Violātis* patriæ *lēgĭbus*, vitâ [24] indignus est. *Fundo* in tres partes *divīso*, redit Tarentum. Sacerdos, adspersâ sanguĭne arâ, abiit. Caius, ruptis vincŭlis, evolavit. Scriptâ epistŏlâ, abiit.

Lesson 37.

Gerunds.

173. The *Gerunds* in *di* are formed from the root of the present, and end in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.

(Hence they are always like the *gen.* of the *participle* in *dus*.)

---

[8] In construing two *nec*'s or *neque*'s, it is often better to *borrow* a '*not*' from them for the verb, and then to construe them by *either—or* instead of *neither—nor*. Thus, 'he *was* with me *neither* yesterday *nor* the day before,' would become 'he *was not* with me *either* yesterday *or* the day before.'

174. The gerund is translated by the '*participial substantive*' in '*ing.*'

☞ When that which is in *form* the participle in *ing*, *governs* or *is governed*, but has nothing to *agree with*, it is the *participial substantive.*

175. The *gerund* may be considered as a *verbal substantive* of the neuter gender; but we must borrow the infinitive mood for its *nominative:* it has no plural.

N.	(occīdĕre, *killing.*)	
G.	occidendi, *of killing.*	
D.	occidendo, *to* or *for killing.*	
Acc.	(occidere) . . . . / occidendum, *when governed by a preposition* / *killing.*	The Gerund governs a noun; in the *same case*, of course, which the verb it comes from governs.
Abl.	occidendo, *by killing.*	

176. VOCABULARY 33.

To feel confident,	confīdĕre.	
Frugality, economy,	parsimonia	(*parsimony*).
Science,	scientia.	
Superfluous; unnecessary,	supervacuus (from *super*, above; *vacuus*, empty).	
Expense,	sumpt-us, *G.* ûs	(*sumptuary* laws)
Nature,	natūra.	
Desirous,	cupĭdus	(*cupidity*).
To be different,	discrepare	(*discrepancy*).
New,	novus	(*novelty*).
Art,	ars, *G.* artis.	
Skilful (in),	perītus (governs *gen.*).	
Horse,	equ us, i	(*equerry*).
Character,	mōres, *G.* morum, *pl.*	(*morals*).

		r.	ρ.	
To see,	vĭdĕre,	vīd,	vīs	(*visible*).
To discover; show,	de-tĕg-ĕre,	tex,	tect	(*de-tect*).
To play,	lūd-ĕre,	lūs,	lūs	(de-*lude*).
To teach,	doc-ēre,	docu,	doc	(*doctor*).
To tame; master,	dŏm-āre,	dŏmu,	domĭt	(in-*dom*-itable).

177. (*Eng.*) Whilst they are playing.
(*Lat.*) *During playing* (inter ludendum).

Exercise 37.

178. Economy is the science of *avoiding* unnecessary expenses. Man is by nature desirous[t] of seeing and hearing new (things). Balbus is skilful *in mas-*

[t] Adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, recollection,* &c. (or their *opposites*) govern the *genitive.*

tering a horse. He is come *to master*[28] the horse. The character of boys discovers itself *whilst they are playing* (177). He learns by teaching. *How much pleasure*[4] (there) is in learning!

Nonnĕ potest docendo discĕre? Cupĭdi sunt docendi. *Sapientis est*[7] supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Discat[30] puer supervacuos sumptus vitāre. Abeat *Romam*. Discat, ut docēre possit. *Quantum tempŏris*[4] ludendo amisērunt! Nemo mortem poterit vitare. Inviti vēnĕrant, ut Sullæ domum evertĕrent. Eversâ Sullæ domo, abiit. Num pueri ludendo discunt? Puer cupĭdus est discendi. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Discrĕpat a timendo confidĕre.

Lesson 38.

Participle in dus.

179. Instead of a *gerund* governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with it.

180. Thus (*Eng.*) The intention *of writing* a letter.
(*Lat.*) Consilium *scribendi* epistŏlam.
(or) Consilium *scribendæ*[u] epistŏlæ.

181. Thus, then, '*epistŏla scribenda*' may be declined throughout.

Sing.
N. Epistŏla scribenda, *a letter to be written.*
G. epistŏlæ scribendæ, *of writing a letter.*
D. epistŏlæ scribendæ, *to* or *for writing a letter.*
Acc. (ad) epistŏlam scribendam, *to write a letter* (or *for writing a letter*).
Abl. epistŏlâ scribendâ, *by writing a letter.*

Plur.
N. epistŏlæ scribendæ, *letters to be written.*
G. epistŏlārum scribendārum, *of writing letters.*

---

[u] The *real* meaning of 'consilium epistŏlæ scribendæ' is, '*the design of* (= about) *a letter* to be written.'

D. epistŏlis scribendis, *to* or *for writing letters.*
Acc. (ad) epistŏlas scribendas, *to write letters* (or, *for writing letters*).
Abl. epistŏlis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

182. Vocabulary 34.

[The forms following the verbs in this and the following vocabulary are r. and *ρ*.]

Book,	liber, libri	(*library*).
Very fond,	studiōsus	(*studious*).
Plato,	Plato, *G.* Platōnis.	
To retain,	re-tĭn-ēre, rĕtĭnu, retent (re, *back*: tenēre, *to hold*)	(*retentive*).
Barbarous,	barbărus.	
Custom,	consuetūd-o, *G.* ĭnis. *Gender?*	
To sacrifice [v],	im-mŏlare	(*immolate*).
Fonder,	cupidi-or, *G.* ōris.	
To buy,	ĕm-ĕre, ēm, empt	(pre*emption*).
To snatch; seize [w],	arrĭpĕre, arripu, arrept (ad, *to*; rapere, *to snatch*).	
Opportunity,	occasi-o, *G.* ōnis. *Gender?*	(*occasion*).
To practise,	exercēre	(*exercise*).
Desire,	cupidĭt-as, ātis	(*cupidity*).
To rule,	rĕgĕre, rex, rect	(di-*rect*).
War,	bellum	(*bellicose*).
To carry on; wage,	gĕrĕre, gess, gest.	
Time,	tempŭs, ŏris. *Gender?*	(*temporal*).

Exercise 38.

183. The boy is very-fond *of writing letters.* Demosthĕnes was very-fond *of hearing Plato. In the times* of Cicero the Gauls retained the barbarous custom *of sacrificing men.* Seize every opportunity *of practising virtue.* Do not lose the opportunities *of practising virtue.* Nature has given *us* a desire *of seeing the truth.* The Romans were fond *of waging war.* Timotheus was skilful [39] in governing a state.

[Obs. Any case of the *partic. in dus*, except the nominative, must be construed by the same case of the *participial substantive*; and the substantive with which it agrees must stand as the accusative *after it.*]

---

[v] Properly, 'to strew the sacred flour or cake (*mola* salsa) on the victim's head:' from *in*, on, and *mola.*

[w] This verb, though of the third, follows the *fourth* in the *imperfect*, &c. as will be explained below. See note *x*, p. 61.

Nonnĕ fundum *ingenti pecuniâ* [21] ēmĕrat? Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendæ virtūtis* arripiēbat. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum*, quam *legendōrum*. Cæsar belli gerendi perītus fuit. Nonnĕ mores puerorum se inter ludendum (177) detĕgunt?

Lesson 39.

184. Obs. After '*is*,' '*are*,' and the other parts of the verb '*to be*,' the form of the *infinitive passive* is used in Latin as a participle of the future passive, to signify *duty, necessity*, &c.

185. Hence what is in English expressed by the *passive infinitive* is to be translated in Latin by the *participle in dus*, when it follows '*is*,' '*are*,' &c.

186. Virtus colenda est.
Virtue to-be-cultivated *is*.
[Virtue *is to be cultivated*.]

☞ The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dus*; with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

187. Vocabulary 35.

By accident,	casu; *abl. of* casus	(*casual*).
Some,	nonnulli, æ, a (non, *not*; nullus, *none*).	
To sharpen,	acuĕre, acu, acūt	(*acute*).
Unprofitable,	inutĭlis (in, *not*; utĭlis, *useful*).	
A game,	lūsus, *G.* ûs.	
Inclined,	propensus	(*propensity*).
To understand,	intellĭg-ĕre, intellex, intellect	(*intelligence*).
To do; act,	agĕre, ĕg, act	(*agent*).
Born,	nātus	(*innate*).
To undertake,	sus-cĭpĕre [x], suscēp, suscept (sub, *under*; capĕre, *to take*).	
To impel,	impellĕre, impŭl, impuls	(*impulse*).
	Not only — but also.	
	Non solum — verum etiam.	
To spend (time, &c.),	impendĕre, impend, impens (followed by *dat.* of participle *in dus*).	

[x] Some verbs of the *third* have the terminations of the *fourth* (in the parts hitherto given), except in the *imperfect subjunctive*, the *infinitive* and the *imperative*. Thus *arripĕre* has arripiebat, arripiet, arripiat, arripiens, arripiendus.

188. ***Ne* Balbus *quidem*.**
Not *Balbus* even (not even Balbus).

Ne patrem *quidem* amat.
Not *his father* even *does he love!*

OBS. '*Not*' with '*even*' (quidem), in the sentence, must be translated by *nē*; and *quidem* must *follow* the word to which the *even* belongs; the *nē* being put *before* that word.

Exercise 39.

189. Every opportunity of practising virtue [14] is *to be seized* [x]. *Even* Caius did *not* seize every opportunity of practising virtue. The gate is to be shut *in the evening* [12]. Balbus *having flown* [35] to the country [37] from the town, bought an estate *for* an immense sum-of-money. The boys are fonder of playing than of learning. *How much time* [4] do they spend *in reading books* [14]? Let him buy the estate for a large sum-of-money.

[OBS. After *ad*, the *gerund* or *part. in dus* may be construed by the *infinitive*: *as*, ad discendum, *to learn*.

Nemo est casu bonus: discenda est virtus. Sunt nonnulli *acuendis* puerōrum *ingeniis* non inutīles lusus. Non solum ad discendum propensi sunt, verum etiam ad docendum. Homo ad intelligendum et agendum natus est. Multa nos ad suscipiendum discendi labōrem impellunt. Multa impellunt Caium, *ut* discendi labōrem *suscipiat* [x]. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detexĕrant. Omnem dicendi * elegantiam augēbit legendis oratoribus et poētis.

Lesson 40.

Verbs followed by the dative.

190. Some verbs are followed by the *dative*, where we use no preposition, and where we should therefore be led by the English to put an *accusative*.

191. A *dative* put—remember pray—
After *envy, spare, obey,*

---

[x] See note, p. 61. * *In* speaking.

Persuade, believe, command; to these
Add *pardon, succour,* and *displease,*
With *vacāre,* 'to have leisure,'
And *placēre,* 'to give pleasure:'
With *nubĕre* (of the *female* said),
The English of it is 'to *wed*:'
Servīre add, and add *studēre,*
Heal, favour, hurt, resist, and *indulgēre.*

192. VOCABULARY 36.

Good for; useful,	utĭlis	(*utility*).
Fit for,	idōneus: governs *dative.*	
To envy,	invĭdĕre, invīd, invīs (in, *into*; vidēre, *to see*)	(*invidious*).
To spare,	parcĕre, pĕperc.	
To obey,	pārēre.	
To believe,	crēdĕre, credĭd, credĭt	(*credible*).
To pardon,	ignoscĕre, ignōv (in, *not*: noscĕre, *to know*).	
To succour,	succurrĕre [y], succurr, succurs (sub, *under*; currĕre, *to run*). subvĕnīre [y], subvēn, subvent (sub, *under*; venire, *to come*).	
To please,	placēre.	
To displease,	displĭcēre.	
To have leisure for,	vacāre.	
To marry (properly '*to veil*'),	nubĕre, nups, nupt	(*nuptials*).
To command,	impĕrāre	(*imperious*).
To persuade,	persuādēre, persuās (per, *thoroughly*; suadēre, *to advise*).	
To think, consider,	putāre	(*to impute*).

Exercise 40.

193. How do you translate *not only—but also?* (187.)

194. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody. Do not envy the good. It is pleasant to succour the miserable. Atticus pleased me. Nobody will believe the wicked. Death spares nobody. They had spared the gate of the city. Portia will marry Caius. Drusilla married Caius *in the autumn.* He spares himself

[y] Of these, *succurrĕre*, 'to *run* to support,' is stronger than *subvĕnire*, 'to *come* to support.'

in the winter. He does not spare even himself. He spares *not only* himself, *but also* his slave. You will never have persuaded me. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

195. Obs. *Est, sunt* may be construed '*must*,' '*ought*,' or '*should*,' when they have a participle in *dus* with them; the part. in *dus* being translated into English by the *infin. passive.*

Cæsar legendo libro vacābit. Christiāni est patriæ suæ legĭbus parēre. Ignosce mihi. Nemo tibi credet. Improbus patriæ legĭbus non parēbit. Num legĭbus parēbunt improbi, violātâ fide? Discant Christiāni animis suis imperāre. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

Lesson 41.

196. The most common terminations of the persons in the active voice are:—

Sing.			*Plur.*		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
m,	s,	t.	mus,	tis,	nt.

197. By changing *t* into these terminations, we may get all the persons of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, and of *all the subjunctive* [z].

198. But observe the vowel before *mus, tis* is long in these tenses, except in the *perf. subjunctive*, in which it is common [a].

199. Vocabulary 37.

[Verbs governing the *dative* continued.]

To be the slave of (to),	servīre, servi (*or* servīv), servīt	(*to serve*).
To devote oneself to; aim at,	stŭdēre	(*study*).
To hurt, injure,	nŏcēre	(*noxious*).

---

[z] Refer to the table in the Appendix, p. 116.

[a] That is, *long* or *short*. The old grammarians made it short in the *perf.*, *long* in the *fut. perfect.*

To resist,	resistĕre, restĭt.
To favour,	fāvēre, fāv, faut.
To indulge; humour,	indulgēre, induls.
Assistance,	adjumentum.

Exercise 41. [*See question* 28, p. 131.]

200. I would have favoured Caius. You would have resisted anger. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. We would have indulged the desire. I was hurting myself. You were hurting me. You were flaying the sheep, not shearing (them). Come *to shut* the gates of the city. Was he come, *to shut* the gates of the city? You had hurt Caius. You had been-the-slave-of passion. Do not be-the-slave-of passion. You were come *to surround* the girl's head with a crown. He had displeased Caius. You were sparing the enemies.

[What is the *imperative* of *vĕnīre?* What tense is used as an *imperative?* (The subj. present.)]

Violābas legem. Barbăram consuetudĭnem immolandōrum homĭnum retinuissētis. Iræ *multos annos* serviĕras. Ne violētis fidem. Portas urbis ne claudātis. Vĕni, ut mihi succurras. Regendis anĭmi cupiditatibus studeāmus. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad obtinendam sapientiam. Tondendæ sunt oves, non deglubendæ. Nonnĕ claudendæ sunt urbis portæ? Exercenda est virtus.

Lesson 42.

201. '*Is*,' properly '*that*,' is used for *he, she, it,* plur. *they*[b], when they do not mean the *same person* or *thing* that the nominative case means.

202. '*Is*' has neuter *id.*
The other cases are formed *as if* from '*eus, ea, eum,*' making the gen. *eius,* written *ĕjus,* and dat. *ei.*

---

[b] *Is*, '*that* person' = *he.*
Ea, '*that* female' = *she,* &c.

But in the plural, the *nom. masc.* and the *dative* are generally *ii*, and *iis*, instead of *eis* [c].

203. Vocabulary 38.

Long,	diu. Longer, *diutius*.	
To recal,	revŏcāre	(to *revoke*).
Literature,	lĭtĕræ (plur.).	
So,	tam.	
So great,	tantus.	
Multitude,	multitūd-o, *G.* ĭnis.	
To count,	nŭmĕrāre	(*numeration*).
To increase,	augēre, r. aux, *p.* auct	(*aug*ment).

204. Si diutius vixisset, nemĭnem habuisset
If longer he had lived, *nobody* he would have had
parem.
equal.
(*If he had lived longer, he would have had no equal.*)

205. Obs. ☞ After '*if*' the *pluperf. indicative* must be translated by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Exercise 42.

206. If they had lived longer, they would have done that. If Caius had lived longer, he would have given me [22)b] an estate. If they had obeyed you, they would be alive [d]. *So-great* is the multitude of the stars, that [31)] you cannot count them. I would have pardoned you, if you had done that. They were aiming *at recalling the kings* [42)].

---

[c] Hence the cases are,

Is, ea, id: *G.* ējus: *D.* ei: *Acc.* eum, eam, id: *Abl.* eo, eā, eo.

Plur. ii, eæ, eă: *G.* eōrum, eārum, eōrum: *D.* and *Abl.* iis (*or* eis): *Acc.* eos, eas, eă.

Obs. When *his, her, its; theirs*, are to be translated by '*is*,' they are translated by the genitive.

When *his, her, its; theirs*, are translated by *suus, suus* must *agree* with its substantive.

Ejus libri, *his* books; *eōrum* libri, *their* books; *sui* libri, *his* or *their* books.

[d] Translate as if it were '*they would live.*'

[☞ When the pluperf. subjunctive has *si*, it must be translated by '*had*,' not by '*would have*.']

Peccavissent, si id fecissent. Pareat animus, non impĕret[e]. Nonnĕ Caius scribendæ epistŏlæ vācavit? Patriam auro, si potuisses, vendidisses. Nonnĕ mores puerŏrum se *inter ludendum* detĕgunt? Malus pastor deglupsisset oves, non totondisset. Si oratōres et poëtas legisset, auxisset elegantiam dicendi.

Lesson 43.

207. *Sing.* Mihi[f] scribendum est, *I must* or *should write.*
Tibi scribendum est, *you must* or *should write.*
Illi scribendum est, *he must* or *should write.*
Plur. Nobis scribendum est, *we must* or *should write.*
Vobis scribendum est, *you must* or *should write.*
Illis scribendum est, *they must* or *should write.*

208. (*Eng.*) I *must* (or *should*) write.
(*Lat.*) It is *to-be-written* by me.

209. ☞ After the part. in *dus*, the person *by whom* is put in the *dative.*

(*a*) If *we* or *you* in English means '*every body*,' or '*people in general*,' the pronoun is left out in Latin.

(*b*) Hence '*edendum est*' is { '*we* should eat,' / or '*you* should eat.'

(*c*) The dative is also left out, whenever the persons meant are not likely *to be mistaken.*

Exercise 43[g].

210. Caius must not sleep. (We) must remain *at Rome* the whole winter [12]. We must live well. We must dwell *in the country*. We must remain *at home*. We must fly from the city (into) the country [37].

---

[e] The *auxiliary verb* is omitted with the second of *two verbs*. Not, '*let him come*, and *let him* take it;' but, '*let him* come and *take* it.'

[f] Explanation. The real meaning of '*scribendum est mihi*' is, '*it is to-be-written by me.*'

[g] In doing the exercise, remember,

(1.) That the *English nominative* is to be put in the *dative*, if a *particular person* (or *persons*) is meant; but *left untranslated*, if what is said holds good of *people in general.*

(2.) The *participle* in *dus* is to be formed from the verb, and written down in the *neuter gender* with *est.*

The wicked *think little of*[1] virtue. Does not the avaricious man *value* money *very highly*[2]? Will a Christian fear death? [No.]

Evolandum est ex urbe. Manendum est Romæ. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. Quiescendum est, ut vitam conservēmus. Ambulandum est per urbem. Laborandum est, ut discas. Discrĕpat a ludendo laborare. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? Num semper ludendum est? Epistŏla suâ manu scribenda est. Crabrōnes non sunt irritandi. Crabrōnem ne irrītes. Irritasne crabrōnem?

Lesson 44.

211. The third persons of the *pres.* and *imperf. subj.* of *esse* (*to be*) are *sit, esset,* from which the other persons may be formed by 196.

212. Pres. sim, sis, sit, | sīmus, sītis, sint.
Imperf. essem, esses, esset, | essēmus, essētis, essent.

213. From these forms those of *posse* may be got, as before explained: 149.

Present subj. possit. [(that) he *may be able.*]
Imperf. subj. posset. [(that) he *might be able.*]

214. VOCABULARY 39.

Self, I myself, You yourself, Itself, &c.	ipse[h], ipsa, ĭpsum. *G.* ipsīus, *D.* ipsi, &c.	
To fight,	pugnāre	(*pugnacious*).
Rightly; well,	rectē; *adv.* from *rectus,* right.	
To hold one's tongue,	tacēre	(*tacit*).
Even,	etiam; placed *before* the word it belongs to.	
Bad,	malus.	
Crop,	sĕgĕs, segĕt-is, f.	
To sow,	sĕrĕre, sēv, sāt.	

---

[h] '*Ipse*' is declined throughout *as if* it were *ipsus,* making Gen. *ĭus. Ipse, ipsa, ipsum,* G. *ipsius,* D. *ipsi,* Acc. *ipsum, ipsam, ipsum,* &c. It must be construed as '*I myself*' when the verb is of the *first person*; '*you yourself,*' when the verb is of the second person.

But ☞ it is better sometimes to place the '*myself,*' '*yourself,*' after the verb and its *accusative,* &c. 'I was breaking the law *myself.*'

Exercise 44.

215. The unlearned must labour, that they may learn. Is it *the business*' of a shepherd to scatter seeds? [No.] The boy must rest, that he may-be-able to play. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. Boys must hold-their-tongues. The girls must walk through the city. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price.

Imprŏbis[i] metuendum est. Discendum est[k], ut possis docēre. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivĕre. Tacendum est. Etiam post malam segĕtem serendum est. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? Nonne fundum ingenti pecuniâ ēmĕras? Nonne Christianōrum est miseris succurrĕre? Scriptâ epistŏlâ, legit.

Lesson 45.

216. If the verb governs *the dative* (191), '*we*' or '*you*' should be untranslated[l]:

Credendum est Caio.
We *should believe Caius.* (Not, '*Caius* should believe.')

217. Vocabulary 40.

Sea-water; salt-water,	aqua marīna.
To invent,	in-vĕnīre, vēn, vent.
Lust,	lubīd-o, *G.* ĭnis. *Gender?* or libīdo (*libidinous*).

---

[i] (*a*) To read off such sentences *at sight*, take the *dative* as the nominative to '*should*' or '*must*;' and add the verb unaltered:

Omnibus, *all men*, moriendum est, *must die.*

(*b*) If *no dative* is expressed, put '*we*' or '*you*' for the nominative before '*must.*'

[k] If the next verb is of the *second person*, put *you* for the nom. of *must.*

[l] If it be necessary to express the *agent* (the person *who is to do* the action), it must be either expressed by the preposition *a* (or *ab*); or the form of the expression must be altered. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* expressed the agent.

222. Vocabulary 41.

To rob,	spoliāre	(*spoliation*).
To defraud,	fraudāre	(*fraud*).
To deprive,	privāre	(*privation*).
To deceive,	decĭpĕre[s], decēp, decept	(*deception*).
To remove (for the purpose of *settling elsewhere*),	migrāre	(*emigrant*).
Because,	quia.	
Eye,	ŏcŭlus, i	(*oculist*).
Apollo,	Apoll-o, ĭnis (son of Jupĭter and Latōna; the heathen god of archery, prophecy, and music).	
Hunger,	fam-es, *G.* is	(*famished*).
Temple,	templum.	
Grain,	grānum.	
One,	ūnus, *G.* unīus, &c.	(*unit*).
Poor,	paupĕr, *G.* paupĕris	(*pauper*).
Judge,	jūdex, jūdĭcis	(*judicial*).
Before, *preposition*,	ante (*governing* acc.).	
Before (before that), *conjunction**,	antĕquam, priusquam.	
Before, *adverb*,	antea.	
So,	adeo.	
Hitherto, yet,	adhuc.	
Strong,	robustus, a, um	(*robust*).
Soldier,	mil-es, *G.* itis	(*militant*).
Contest,	certam-en, *G.* inis, neut.	

Obs. In *antĕquam, priusquam*, the words are often separated by other words intervening: *ante—quam.*

Exercise 46.

[The *pres. subj.* is used as an *imperative.*]

223. We should favour the good. We should believe Caius, because he has never deceived us. We must surround the boy's head with a crown. We must shut the gate of the city *in the evening.* Do not defraud (*plur.*) me of my praise. Do not deprive me

[s] From *de*, from; *capĕre*, to take: this verb is one of those which prefix an *i* to the termination (that is, take the terminations of the fourth) except in the *present infinitive*, and the two tenses which we have shown how to get from the *present infinitive;* that is, the *imperf. subjunctive* and the *imperative.* See 187, note *x.* In the *pres. indic.* they follow the *fourth*, but have *i* short (*io, ĭs, ĭt, ĭmus, ĭtis, iunt*). See 22, p. 120.

* Or *conjunctional adverb;* standing *first* in its sentence, and connecting it with another sentence.

of my eyes. Having written his letter (169, *a*), he *went to bed.* Do not the wicked deprive virtue herself of her praise? You are depriving (*pl.*) me of my praise. Will you break the laws of your country? Virtue must be cultivated, that you may live well and happily. (Translate *as if it were*, may-be-able to live.)

[When '*ante*' or '*prius*' is in one sentence, and the next begins with '*quam*,' take no notice of the word till you get to *quam*, and translate *ante-quam, prius-quam* by '*before.*']

Non est *ante* edendum, *quam* fames impĕrat. Apollĭnis templum omni argento spoliāvit. Ne grano quidem uno paupĕres fraudētis. Ne me luce privētis. Ocŭlisnĕ me, judĭces, privabĭtis? Ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt paupĕres. Athēnis habitandum est, ut discāmus recte vivĕre. Romam migrandum est, ut discātis civitātem regere. Etiam post malam segĕtem serēmus. Leges patriæ violātis. Violātis patriæ legĭbus (169), meâ me laude spoliātis. Num meâ me laude spoliabĭtis? Dicendi elegantia legendis oratoribus et poētis augenda est.

Lesson 47.

224. Infinitive Mood.

		1.	2.	3.	4.	
Pres. }	(R.) (107*)	ārĕ	ērĕ	ĕrĕ	īrĕ	(*Active*)
Imp. }		ārī	ērī	ī	īrī	(*Passive*)
Perf. }	(r.)	issĕ				(*Active*)
Plup. }		past partic. with *esse* '*to be*'				(*Passive*).

(*a*) The *future infinitive active* is made up, as in English, of '*to be*,' with the *future participle active.*

In the *passive*, the *future infinitive* is made up of the *supine* with *iri.*

(*b*) Thus from *amāre* the infinitives are *am-āre, am-av-isse; amatūrum esse, amātum esse,* and *amātum iri.*

225. ☞ The infinitives made up of *two words* are called *compound* infinitives.

☞ The *participles* of the compound infinitives * must *agree* with their substantives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered.*

(*a*) Videt te esse beātum.
He sees that *you are happy.*

(*b*) Sperat se victūrum esse
He hopes that *he shall live.*

226. *Two* English sentences joined by the conjunction '*that*' are often made *one* Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the *nominative* into the *accusative*, and the verb into the *infinitive.*

227. To turn such a sentence into Latin,
(1) Take no notice of '*that*;'
(2) Translate the English *nominative* by the Latin *accusative;*
(3) Translate the English verb by the *infinitive* of the *same tense.*

Exercise 47.

228. He sees, that you are happy. If he had come, he would have seen that you are happy. He says, that you have surrounded the girl's head with a garland. It is certain (certum est), that a Christian does not fear death. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labours *very highly*[2]. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly.* It is certain, that the father will avenge the death of his son. It is certain, that Caius has removed *to Athens*[33], that he may learn to live well. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death.*

Certum est, in summis Alpĭbus tantum esse frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat. Certum est, stellārum tantam esse multitudĭnem, ut numerāri non possint. Certum est, Balbum patriam auro vendidisse. Certum est, avem in summâ quercu nidum constructūram esse. Certum est Cæsărem belli gerendi perītum fuisse. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superavĕrit.

* They are set down in the *acc. masc.*

Lesson 48.

Forms of the Passive. (Tenses from the root of the present.)

229. The third persons of the passive are formed from the third persons of the active by adding *ur* [t].

(*a*) But the vowel before the *t* is *long*, except from *it* (of the *third*), *ābit* and *ēbit*.

230. ☞ The *Imperative pass.* is like the *infinitive active*.

231. VOCABULARY 42.

To beg for, To make for [u],	pĕtĕre [u], petīv, petīt	(*petition*).
To pray, pray for,	ōrāre	(*oratory*).
Ambassador, Lieutenant *,	legātus	(the Pope's *legate*).
Ship,	nāv-is, is	
To consult,	consŭlĕre, consŭlu, consult.	
Persians,	Pers-æ, arum.	

232. Abit visūrus.
He goes away to see.
(*Eng.*) He goes *to see.*
(*Lat.* sometimes) He goes *about-to-see* [v] (part. in *rus*).

---

[t] Thus,

	Indicative, 1.	2.	3.	4.	Passive. 1.	2.	3.	4.
Present,	at,	et,	*it*,	it,	ātur,	ētur,	*ĭtur*,	ītur.
Imperfect,	ābat,	ēbat,	ēbat,	iēbat,	ābātur,	ēbātur,	ēbātur,	iēbātur
Future,	*ābit*,	*ēbit*,	et,	iet,	*ābĭtur*,	*ēbĭtur*,	ētur,	iētur.
Subjunct.								
Present,	et,	eat,	at,	iat,	ētur,	eātur,	ātur,	iātur.
Imperfect,	āret,	ēret,	ĕret,	īret,	ārētur,	ērētur,	ĕrētur,	īrētur.
			Infinitive,		āri,	ēri,	i,	īri.
Imperative (like *Infin. act.*)					āre,	ēre,	ĕre,	īre.

The *third persons plural* are formed from the corresponding *third persons plural* of the *active*, by adding '*ur*' without any further change.

☞ The third sing. of the *imperfect subjunct.* may also be got by adding *tur* to the *infin. act.* with its final *e* lengthened.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Inf. pres.,	āre,	ērĕ,	ĕrĕ,	īrĕ.
Imp. subj.	ārē-tur,	ērē-tur,	ĕrē-tur,	īrē-tur.

[u] *Pĕtĕre* expresses the *moving towards* or *aiming at* some object; whether the *motion* is actual motion towards a *place*, or a *movement* of the mind towards that for which it *sues*.

* By '*lieutenant*' is meant the *second in command:* a lieutenant-general.

[v] Or, '*intending* to see,' which is often the meaning of this participle.

Exercise 48.

The English *infinitive* expressing the *purpose*, may often be translated by the *future participle*.

233. Ambassadors are sent *to beg* for peace (18, *b*). Ambassadors will be sent, to pray for peace (18, *b*). He goes away to consult (18, *c*) Apollo. The law will be broken. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked both at Rome and at Athens. Let your word be kept. We must remove to Rome, that our faith may be kept. Money must not be valued at a great price. Let the state be ruled by the wise. The Persians make-for their ships.

[OBS. The participle in *rus* may often be translated by the *English infinitive*.]

Cæsar Romam rediit, copias *quam maxĭmas*[9] comparatūrus. Patrem suum consultūrus, abit. Mittantur legāti, pacem petītum. Virtus ab omnĭbus colātur[30]. Omnis occasio exercendæ virtūtis arripiātur. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem exercendæ virtūtis a Christiāno arrīpi. Paupĕres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratoribus et poetis. Abiit dormiturus.

Lesson 49.

234. Relative Pronoun. (Qui, *who, which, that.*)

	Singular.					*Plural.*				
	N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.	N.	G.	D.	Abl.	Acc.
Mas.	Qui,	cujus,	cui,	quem,	quo,	qui,	quōrum,	quĭbŭs,		quos.
Fem.	Quæ,			quam,	quâ,	quæ,	quārum,			quas.
Neut.	Quod,			quod,	quo,	quæ,	quōrum,			quæ.

235. ☞ The *substantive* (or *pronoun*) that the relative *stands for*, is to be looked for in the *sentence before*.

(*a*) The relative must be put in the same *gender*, *number*, and *person*, as its *antecedent* [x].

236. ☞ The *case* of the relative has *nothing to do* with the other sentence.

☞ The relative must be *governed*, as to *case*, by the verb (or some other *governing* word) of *its own sentence* [y].

☞ *Is, ea, id,* is the regular antecedent pronoun to *qui*.

237. ☞ The verbs which govern *the dative* in the *active*, can only be used *impersonally* [z] in the *passive*.

Mihi creditur [a],	*I am believed.*
Tibi creditur,	*Thou art believed.*
Illi creditur,	*He is believed.*
Nobis creditur,	*We are believed.*
Vobis creditur,	*You are believed.*
Illis creditur,	*They are believed.*

238. VOCABULARY 43.

No,	nullus, *G.* nullius	(*null* and void).
Animal,	animal [b], *G.* animālis. *Gender?*	
Heart,	cor, *G.* cordis, n.	(*cordial*).
Tree,	arbor, *G.* arbŏris, f.	(*arbour*).
Fruit,	fruct-us, *G.* ūs	(*fructify*).
To behold,	adspĭcĕre, adspex, adspect	(*aspect*).

Exercise * 49.

239. The good are envied. Have you not spared

---

[x] The *ante-cedent* (that is, *going-before* noun) is the substantive or pronoun *for which* the relative stands as a representative.

[y] The use of the relative is, to prevent the same substantive from being expressed in each clause.

"The apple *which* you gave me," instead of "the apple, *which apple* you gave me." "The mountain on *whose* top," &c., instead of "the mountain, on the top *of which mountain*." "The man *who* did this," &c., instead of "the man, *which man* did this."

[z] To be used *impersonally* is, to be used only in the *third person* singular, and without a nominative case.

[a] Hence,

(*Eng.*) *I* am pardoned, favoured, persuaded, &c.

(*Lat.*) *It is pardoned, favoured, persuaded,* to me.

[b] Neuters in *e, al, ar,* make their ablatives in *i*; nom. plur. *ia*; gen. *ium*.

* The *second person* plural of the imperative may be got by adding

the conquered? He gave me the crown, with which he had surrounded the girl's head. Let anger be resisted, which has been prejudicial to many states. Caius, who sold his country for gold, should be condemned *to death*. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treachery. Caius, whose mother lives[c] in the country, has himself removed to Rome. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered.

[When a *pass.* verb is one that governs the *dative*, take this *dat.* as if it were the *nom.* to the verb.]

Nullum anĭmal, quod sanguĭnem habet, sine corde esse potest. Arbŏres serit agricŏla, quārum fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Pauperĭbus, qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. Parcātur victis. Pepercisti victis. Caio ignoscĭte. Violavistis fidem. Iræ resistitur. Nihil facile persuadētur invitis.

Lesson 50.

240. '*He who*,' '*those who*,' are generally translated by '*qui*' only, instead of by '*is qui*,' '*ii qui*.'

241. A deponent verb is a verb that has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

242. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles.

☞ The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs have not got.

[(1) Loquens, *speaking*: (2) locūtus, *having spoken*: (3) locutūrus, *about to speak*: (4) loquendus, *to be spoken*.]

---

le to the second singular; but in the third, *t* must be changed into *t* before this addition is made.

1.	2.	3.	4.
āte,	ēte,	ĭte,	īte.

The terminations of the perfect are for all the conjugations:

i,	isti,	it	ĭmus,	istis,	ērunt.

[c] Dwells, habĭtat.

243. VOCABULARY 44.

To recollect,	reminisci	(*reminiscence*).
To remember,	recordāri	(*record*).
To enjoy,	frui	(*fruition*).
To use,	ūti, ūsus.	
To discharge,	fungi, functus	(*function*).
To get possession,	potīri, potītus (*but* pŏtĭtur).	
To pity,	miserēri	(*misery*).
To forget,	oblivisci, oblītus	(*oblivion*).
A benefit,	beneficium.	
An injury,	injūria.	
Duty,	officium	(*office*).
Arms,	arma, *G.* ōrum.	
Some time or other,	aliquando.	
Eternal,	sempiternus.	
Crime,	flagitium	(*flagitious*).

244. After to '*pity*,' '*remember*,' '*forget*,'
A genitive case is properly set [d].

245. With '*use*,' '*discharge*,' '*possession get*,' and also with '*enjoy*,'
An ablative correctly stands: remember this, my boy.

Exercise 50.

246. *He* who sins *unwillingly*, is free from blame. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. Let us use our arms and horses. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? Is the life, *that* we now enjoy, eternal? Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life.

Christianōrum est miserēri paupĕrum. Homo imprŏbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabĭtur. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. Vincāmus odium, paceque potiāmur. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. Beātus est, qui omnĭbus vitæ officiis fungĭtur. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxĕrant.

---

[d] But '*remember*' and '*forget*' often govern the accusative.

Lesson 51.

247. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* of the *mas.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*.

[Doctus, doct-*ior*; sapiens, *G.* sapient-is, sapient-*ior*; tener, tener-*ior* [e]; pulcher (pulchr), pulchr-*ior* [e].]

248. The superlative is formed by adding *issĭmus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(*a*) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rĭmus* (*a, um*) to the nominative.

(Pulcher, pulcherrĭmus.)

249. *Simĭlis* (*like*), *facĭlis* (*easy*), and a few more in *lis*, make the superlative in *limus*.

(Simillĭmus, facillĭmus.)

250. The following are quite irregular:—

Bonus (*good*), melior, optĭmus.	magnus (*great*), major, maxĭmus.
Malus (*bad*), pejor, pessĭmus.	parvus (*little*), minor, minĭmus.

251. VOCABULARY 45.

Air,	aër, *G.* aëris, *m.*	
Light,	lĕvis	(*levity*).
Heavy,	grăvis	(*gravity*).
It is well known / It is allowed,	constat [f].	
It is better,	præstat (præ, *before*: stat, *it stands*).	
Sound,	sonus, *G.* i.	
Swift,	vēl-ox, *G.* ōcis	(*velocity*).
Slow,	tardus	(*tardy*).
Summer,	æst-as, *G.* ātis.	
Dog,	cănis	(*canine*).
Wolf,	lŭpus, *G.* i.	
The moon,	lūna.	
Nearer,	propior (with *dat.*).	
Excellent,	præstan-s, *G.* tis.	
Strength,	rōbŭr, *G.* robŏr-is. *Gender?*	
Ignorance,	ignoratio.	

[e] Remember that for adjectives in *er* the whole nominative is the root; the preceding *e* being often dropt.

[f] Con, *together*; stat, *it stands*: 'it stands together' as a *consistent* truth.

Knowledge,	scĭentia	(*science*).
To speak,	lŏqui, lŏcūtus	(e-*locution*).
Simple,	simplex, *G.* simplĭc-is.	
Wealth,	ŏpes, *G.* opum, *plur.*	

252. (*a*) Eurōpa minor est quam Asia.
Europe less is than Asia.

(*b*) Nihil est clementiâ divinius.
Nothing is than clemency *more godlike*
(*Nothing is more godlike than clemency.*)

253. ☞ '*Than*,' after a comparative, is (252, *a*) either translated by *quam*, or omitted (252, *b*), the following noun being put in the *ablative*.

(*a*) If '*quam*' is expressed, the following noun will, of course, be in the *same case* as that to which '*quam*' joins it.

Exercise 51.

254. (*Quam* expressed.) Air is lighter than water. It is well known that light is swifter than sound.

(*Quam* omitted.) In the spring and summer the days are longer than the nights. Silver is lighter than gold. Is not silver lighter than gold? Is it not well known, that sound is slower than light? Is not a dog very-like a wolf?

Aurum gravius est argento. Luna terræ propior est, quam sol. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. Virtus præstantior est robŏre. Ignoratio futurōrum malōrum utilior est, quam scientia. Majus est prodesse omnĭbus, quam opes magnas habēre. Certum est solem majōrem esse quam terram. Sæpe facĕre præstat quam loqui. Simplex cibus puĕris utilissĭmus est.

Lesson 52.

255. Vocabulary 46.

[Prepositions governing the accusative.]

Ad,	to.
Adversus,	against, towards. (*See* erga.)
Ante,	before.
Apud,	at: before a plural name of persons, *amongst*. Apud me, '*with* me;' that is, '*at my house:*' apud Romanos, '*amongst* the Romans.'
Circa,	about (of *time* and *place*).
Circum,	about (of *place* only).
Cis, citra,	on this side of.
Contra,	against: over-against.
Erga,	towards (not of *motion;* but after words expressing a kind *feeling*, a *duty*, &c.).
Extra,	without (in the sense of *not within*), out of; beyond.
Infra,	beneath.
Inter,	amongst (inter se, 'to each other [g]'), between.
Intra	within.

To have,	habēre.	
To observe (*duties*),	conservāre	(*conservative*).
To move (*transitive*),	mŏvēre, mōv, mōt.	
To move (*intransitive*),	mŏvēri, mōtus: properly '*to be moved.*'	
Saturn,	Sāturnus, father of Jupiter, by whom he was dethroned. He devoured his own children.	
Jupiter,	Jūpĭter [h], *Gen.* Jovis (and then formed regularly from *Jov*), the king of the heathen gods.	
Arms,	arm-a, *G.* orum.	
The sea,	mar-e, *G.* is, neut.	(*maritime*).
Surface,	superfici-es, *G.* ei	(*superficial*).
The moon,	luna	(*lunar*).
Dutiful-affection,	pĭĕt-ās, *G.* ātis.	
The Rhine,	Rhēn-us, i.	
To expire,	exspirare.	

256. Maris superficies major est, quam
The sea's surface greater is than (that [i])
terræ.
of the earth (257).

257. When the same noun would be expressed in

---

[g] After contrarius, *contrary*, &c.

[h] Jupiter and Saturn are also two of the planets.

[i] Here '*that*' stands for '*the surface.*'

both clauses, it is left out in that which follows *quam* (*than*).

a) In English it is represented in the second clause by '*that*,' '*those*.' Hence,

(*b*) ☞ '*That*,' '*those*,' after '*than*,' are to be untranslated.

Exercise 52.

258. (Our) duties towards (our) parents are to be observed. Do many come to old age? We must fight against the evils of old age. *It is an allowed fact*, that the earth moves round the sun. Your benefits are greater than *those* of your brother. Is not simple food very good for boys? Let us be gentle towards the conquered. The star of Jupiter is nearer the earth than that of Saturn.

Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. Nulla habēmus arma contra mortem. Patrium habet adversus bonos viros animum. Luna circum terram movētur. Nulla est firma amicitia inter malos. Piĕtas erga patriam conservanda est. Jovis stella infra Saturnum est. Galli cis Rhenum habĭtant. Pisces extra aquam cito exspīrant. Intra muros habitābat. Inter se (p. 82, *g*) contraria * sunt beneficium et injuria.

Lesson 53.

259. '*May*' and '*might*' (when they stand in a *principal* sentence) are translated by *licet*, 'it is allowed.'

260. *May*, licet (= *it is allowed*).
Might, licuit (= *it was allowed*).

261.	Mihi ire licet,	*I may go.*
	Tibi ire licet,	*You may go.*
	Illi ire licet,	*He may go.*
	Nobis ire licet,	*We may go.*
	Vobis ire licet,	*You may go.*
	Illis ire licet,	*They may go.*

* When an adjective agrees with two nouns it is in the plural; here, as they are the names of *things*, it is in the *neuter* gender.

262. Mihi ire licuit, *I might* have gone.
Tibi ire licuit, *You might* have gone.
&c. &c.

Non licet homini servire gloriæ, { *A man may not be the slave-of (to) glory.*

263. ☞ The *present* infinitive follows '*licuit,*' in spite of '*have.*'

264. (*Eng.*) I may go. { (*Lat.*) *it is allowed me to go.*

(*Eng.*) I might *have gone.* { (*Lat.*) *it was allowed me* (then) to go.

265. VOCABULARY 47.

[Prepositions governing the accusative, continued.]

Juxta,	close to; by	(*juxta*position).
Ob,	on account of (ob ocŭlos, *before* one's eyes).	
Pĕnĕs,	in the power of.	
Per,	through; by means of	(*per*foration).
Pŏnĕ,	behind.	
Post,	after	(*post*pone).
Præter,	besides, beyond	(*præter*perfect).
Prope,	near.	
Propter,	near; on account of.	
Secundum,	along; according to.	
Supra,	above.	
Trans,	across, beyond; on the other side of	(*trans*figure).
Ultrā,	beyond.	(*ultra*montane).
Usque,	*as far as* (properly an *adverb*, used with *ad*).	

Fear,	mĕtus, *G.* metûs.	
Shore,	lītŭs, ŏr-is. *Gender?*	
A camp,	castr-a, ōrum, *plur.*	
To place,	pōnĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭt	(*position*).
Journey; way,	ĭter, *G.* ĭtĭnĕr-is, *neut.*	(*itiner*ant).

266. He '*threatens me* with *death,*' should be In Latin, '*threatens death* to me.'
(Mihi mortem minātur.)

Exercise 53.

[☞ When the answer '*yes*' cannot possibly be expected, '*an*' should be used rather than '*num*' (153) for the *interrogative adverb.*]

267. A man may not be-the-slave-of glory. A Christian may not be-the-slave-of pleasure. May Christians be-the-slaves-of pleasure? We must not be-the-slaves-of anger. Might he not *have dwelt* at Rome? No one may break the laws of his country. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. We must

remove across the Rhine, that we may learn to devote-ourselves-to literature.

Servi parent propter metum; boni propter officium. Navigatio juxta litus sæpe est periculōsa. Cæsar juxta murum castra posuit. Supra nos cœlum conspicĭmus; infra nos terram. Longum iter est per præcepta; breve[k] et efficax per exempla. Secundum leges vivendum est. Condita Massilia est prope ostia Rhodăni amnis. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie immĭnet. Nonne licuit Athēnis habĭtare? Janus[l] bis post Numæ[m] regnum clausus fuit. Nonne mortem tibi minabātur? Imperium populōrum est penes magistratus.

Lesson 54.

(*On the translation of* ought.)

268. '*Ought*' is translated by the *impersonal* verb '*oportet*,' '*it behoves*.'

269. Me ire oportet, *I ought to go.*
Te ire oportet, *You ought to go.*
&c.
Me ire oportuit, *I ought to* have gone.
Te ire oportuit, *You ought to* have gone.
&c.

270. Obs. When the *infin. perfect* follows '*ought*,' *ought* is to be translated by *oportuit*, and the *perfect infinitive* translated by the *present* infinitive.

271. So too after '*could*,' the *perfect infinitive* (which will be without '*to*') will be translated by the *present infinitive*.
[*Facĕre* potuit, *he could* have done (*it*).]

---

[k] Of two connected sentences one must borrow its *nominative case* and *verb* from the other. Thus the second will become, breve et efficax *est iter*, &c.

[l] *Janus* was a heathen god, represented with *two faces*, one looking each way: his temple at Rome was *shut* in time of peace.

[m] Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

272. Cărēre *lack* or *am without*,
And egeo, *require*
Or *need*, do both, without a doubt,
An ablative desire.

(*a*) But egeo *sometimes*, and indigeo *often*, takes the genitive.

273. Vocabulary 48.

[Prepositions governing the ablative.]

A, ab, abs [n],	from; by (before the *doer* of the action).
Absquĕ [o],	without.
Clam,	without the knowledge of.
Coram,	before; in the presence of.
Cum,	with.
Dē,	concerning; about (*of*, when it means *about*).
E, ex [p],	out of; from.
Præ,	before; in comparison with (*prefer*).
Prō,	for.
Sĭnĕ,	without. (*sine*cure).
Tenus,	as far as (which follows its noun, and in the *plural* may govern the genitive).

To die,	mŏri, mortuus (*moribund*) (with terminations *of the fourth*, except in *present* [where it has them in *first sing.* and *third plur.*] *infinitive*, *imperative*, and *imperf. subjunctive*).

Exercise 54.

274. Ought we not to succour the miserable? Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible?* Ought not Balbus to have kept his word? Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? I have received many letters from you. The bird has flown away from my hands. He is gone away (Perf. Act. 161) *without* his father's *knowledge*.

275. [Obs. After *oportuit* the present infinitive is to be construed by '*to have*,' &c.]

Dulce est pro patriâ mori. Coram populo loquētur. Argentum præ auro contemnĭtur. Cæcus de coloribus judicāre non potest. Etiam sine magistro vitia dis-

---

[n] *A* before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and it *may* stand before *any* of the *consonants* in *hujus laris*. *Abs* only before the consonants in *quot*.

[o] *Absque* is uncommon.

[p] E before *consonants*; ex before *vowels* or *consonants*.

cuntur. Usitātæ res facĭle e memoriâ elabuntur. Vapōres a sole ex aquis excitantur. Alexander omnia Oceăno tenus vicit. Caius febri caret. Omnes[q] paupĕrum auxilio egēmus. Fidem servāri oportuit. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. In illo prœlio equĭtes nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis?

Lesson 55.

276. Vocabulary 49.

[Prepositions, acc. or abl.]

In, with *acc.* into, to, towards, against, for.
In, with *abl.* in, upon, among, in the case of.

[The prepositions *in* and *sub* govern the *acc.* in answer to *whither* (that is, after verbs of *motion*); and the *ablative* in answer to *where* (that is, after verbs of *rest*).]

Super, with *acc.* { above, over, beyond (generally after verbs of motion), besides.
Super, with *abl.* { upon[r]; *on* or *of* (a subject *enquired* or *written* about).

Sub ĭdem tempus, about the same time.

To heal, medēri, governing dative (by 191) (*medicine*).
To seem, vĭdēri, visus. (*vis*ible).
To desire, { cŭpĕre, cŭpīv, cŭpīt (with the added *i.* 187, x) } (*cupidity*).
More, plus, *G.* pluris[s]. (*plur*al).

277.

English.	*Latin.*
How much greater,	*By how much* greater; *quanto* major.
So much greater,	*By so much* greater; *tanto* major.
Much greater,	*By much* greater; *multo* major.
Considerably greater,	*By some-deal* greater; *aliquanto* major.

278. (*Eng.*) The more he teaches, the more he learns.
(*Lat.*) *By-how-much* more he teaches, *by-so-much* more he learns.
(or) *By what* more he teaches, *by that* more he learns.

279. ☞ '*The*' — '*the*' before two comparatives

---

[q] When the verb is of the *first* or *second* person, and an adjective is expressed, put *we* or *you* before the adjective. Thus, *omnes*, we all, &c.

[r] This belongs to poetry.

[s] It has no other forms in the sing. In plural *plures, plura*, G. *plurium*, &c.

must be translated by '*quanto*'—'*tanto*,' or by '*quo*'—'*eo*.'

280. Obs. The *tanto* or *eo* goes with that assertion which *follows* from the other.

If you have any doubt, turn it into a sentence with '*if*,' and let the '*if*' sentence have the *quanto* or *quo*.

(*a*) Thus in the example (278), his *learning* more will *follow*, or be the *consequence* of, his *teaching* more.

'*If*' he teaches much, *he will learn more* than he otherwise would.

Exercise 55.

281. How much greater is the sun than the earth? The earth is much greater than the moon. My estate is considerably bigger than yours. The days are considerably longer. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. Is not your garden considerably bigger than mine? Is not my garden much bigger than yours? Is my garden much bigger than yours? [No.]

Quo amarior potio, eo sæpe salubrior est. Quanto tempus est felicius, tanto brevius esse vidētur. Quo plura habent homĭnes, eo plura cupiunt. Nunquam licet peccāre. Juvĕni părandum est; seni utendum. Nē jures. Jurasně?

Lesson 56.

282. Vocabulary 50.

[The comparative of an adverb is the *neuter* of the comparative adjective.]

Facĭle,	easily (from *facĭlis*, easy): *facĭlius*, more easily.
Cito,	quickly (from *citus*, quick): *citius*, more quickly.
Bark,	cortex, cortĭcis, *m.* (de*cortic*ated).
To cover, surround,	ob-dūcĕre, dux, duct.
Safe,	tutus.
Virtuous, upright,	honestus. Virtuously, *honeste*.
Courageously,	fortĭter (comparative, *fortius*).

283. (*Eng.*) I ploughed it three times, *that* it might produce the *better* crop.

(*Lat.*) I ploughed it three times, *by which*[t] it might produce a *better* crop.

---

[t] Arāvi, &c., *quo* posset *meliōres* fruges edĕre.

284. (*a*) When '*that*' is in a sentence that has a comparative in it, it may be translated by *quo* with the subjunctive.

(*b*) '*That*' with comparatives and '*the*,' By '*quo*' may best translated be.

285. (*Eng.*) Some persons think.
(*Lat.*) There are some who think (sunt qui putent).
(*Eng.*) Some persons thought.
(*Lat.*) There were who thought (erant qui putārent).

Exercise 56.

286. Some persons think that faith should not be kept against[u] enemies. It is difficult to heal the mind. Hold-your-tongues, *that* you may be the more easily able to learn. He spoke much, *that* he might seem wise. He spoke much, *that* he might seem *the* wiser. He lived virtuously, that he might die *the* more courageously. It is certain that Caius lived many years at Carthage. Do not spare me.

[When there is a comparative in the sentence, construe *quo* by '*that*,' and put '*the*' before the comparative.]

Trunci arbŏrum cortĭce obducuntur, *quo* sint a frigŏre et calōre tutiōres. An licet Christiānis gloriæ servīre? Omnĭbus ignoscendum est. Ne multa loquĕre. Miserēre nostri. Natūrâ omnes propensi sumus ad discendum. An retinenda est barbăra consuetūdo immolandōrum homĭnum? Nonne mors quotidie ob ocŭlos ponenda est?

Lesson 57.

	English.	*Latin.*
287.	*I repent of my folly,*	It-repents me of my folly.
	I am vexed at my folly,	It-vexes me of my folly.
	I am ashamed of my folly,	It-shames me of my folly.
	I pity the poor,	It-pities me of the poor.
	I am weary of life,	It-irks me of life.

[u] Adversus.

(*a*) Me meæ stultitiæ pœnĭtet[v].
(*b*) Me meæ stultitiæ piget.
(*c*) Me meæ stultitiæ pudet.
(*d*) Misĕret me paupĕrum.
(*e*) Tædet me vitæ.

288. When '*ut*' the word for '*that*' would be,
'*That-not*' may *both* be done by nē;
Unless a '*so*' or '*such*' preceded,
For then a '*non*' will still be needed.

289. (*a*) Palpĕbræ molles sunt ne
The eye-lids soft are, that
premant ocŭlum.
they may not *press the eye.*

(*b*) Tanta est multitūdo, ut non possint
So great is the multitude, that they cannot
numerāri.
be numbered.

290. VOCABULARY 51.

Slothful,	ignāvus (in, *not*; gnavus, *active*).
Sloth,	ignavia.
Some-time-or-other,	aliquando.
Physician,	medĭcus (*medical*).
Some,	alĭquis (something, *alĭquid*).
Attentive,	studiōsus (*studious*).
To order,	jubēre, juss, juss (followed by *acc.* with *inf.*).
To learn by heart,	e-discĕre.
Athenian,	Atheniensis. (*Ensis* is a common termination of names derived from towns.)
Socrătes,	Socrăt-es, *G.* is (one of the greatest of heathen men. He taught the *immortality of the soul*, and was put to death by his countrymen the Athenians).
To value more highly,	pluris facĕre.
To cause to be made,	*faciendum* curāre (the partic. to agree with its noun).

Exercise 57.

291. It is more pleasant to make a friend, than to have (one). The slothful man will some-time-or-other repent of his sloth. Christians pity the poor.

[v] These verbs are regularly conjugated: pœnitet, pœnitēbat, pœnituit, pœnituerat, pœnitēbit, &c.

He will give the physician something, *that* he may be *the* more attentive. I order my son never to remember this injury. We give verses to boys to-be-learnt-by-heart. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. Have you not understood, that I do not need money? Anger has cost the state much blood. I *value you more-highly* every day.

292. Gallĭnæ avesque relĭquæ pennis fovent pullos, ne frigŏre lædantur. Eōrum miserēri oportet, qui propter fortūnam, non propter malitiam in miseriis sunt. Tui me misĕret: mei piget. Raro primi consilii Caium pœnĭtet. Sapientia semper eo contenta est, quod adest. Scipio dicēbat, malle[w] se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidĕre. Sic adhuc vixi, ut nemo unquam me ullĭus injuriæ accusavĕrit. Pontem in Istro flumĭne faciendum curavi. *Inter ambulandum* (177) multa mecum locūtus est.

Lesson 58.

293. *Et* followed by another *et; tum* or *quum* followed by *tum*, are *both—and.*

294. Non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also.*

295. Tam—quam, { *so—as: as—as.* / *as well—as.* / *both—and.*

296. Etiam, *even, also* (etiam atque etiam, *again and again*); quoque, *also, too* (*follows* the word it belongs to).

Exercise 58.

297. Amphibia et in aquâ et in terrâ vivunt. Et discet puer, et docebit. Etiam tu hinc abis? Rogo te, et etiam oro. Et Romæ vixi et Carthagine. Ut mihi succurras, etiam atque etiam (296) te rogo. Lupus quum ovem tum canem momordĕrat. Ovem

---

[w] That he had rather: infinitive of *mālo* (which see).

non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. Horti parantur tum ad utilitatem, tum ad jucunditatem. Multæ herbæ quum jucundissimum tum saluberrimum cibum suppeditant. Tam canes quam lupi cæcos pariunt catŭlos. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est.

Lesson 59.

298. Aut, *or.*
aut—aut; vel—vel, *either—or.*
299. sive—sive } *either—or.*
seu—seu } *whether—or.*
vel is (*a*) sometimes '*even;*' (*b*) with superlatives, '*very,*' '*extremely,*' '*possible.*'

300. *Sive*[x] is used, when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided, which of two assertions or names is the right one; and when a second name is a mere *alias* of the first.

Exercise 59.

301. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigŏre rigent, aut uruntur calōre. Viri nobiles, vel corrumpere mores civitatis, vel corrigere possunt. Quam sis morōsus, vel (299) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese * vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, pœnas persolvērunt. Nonnulli, sive felicitate quadam, sive bonitate naturæ, sive parentum disciplīnâ, rectam vitæ secuti sunt viam. Sine solis calōre nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus est, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpŏri prodest. Vel (299, *a*) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefĕro. Caii eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas.

---

[x] Sive is si-ve, '*or if.*' Thus 'Caius *sive* Balbus,' is 'Caius, *or if* you like, Balbus' (for that is another name of his).

* See p. 120, 23.

Lesson 60.

(Adversative conjunctions, or such as mark an *opposition.*)

302. At, sed, autem, verum, vero, *but.*

Tamen, attămen, Veruntămen,	*yet; but; but yet.*
Atqui,	*but* or *now* (as used in reasoning).

Exercise 60.

303. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meus; *at* placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit idem Themistŏcles; at Perĭcles idem non fecit. Si certum est[y] facere, facias; *verum* ne post confĕras culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impedior. Aut hoc aut illud est: non *autem* hoc (est); ergo (304) illud (est). Absolūtus est Caius; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniâ. Videtis nihil esse morti tam simile, quam somnum: *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

Lesson 61.

304.

Nam, namque, enim,	*for.*
Igitur, ideo,	*therefore.*
Ergo,	*therefore, then.*
Itaque,	*accordingly; and so; therefore.*
Quare,	*wherefore.*

Exercise 61.

305. In eâ re prudentiâ adjūtus est: *nam,* quum devicisset hostes, summâ æquitate res constituit. Hac pugnâ nihil nobilius: nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus tantum exercitum devicit.

---

[y] Si certum est (*if it is fixed*) - *if you are resolved.*

Magno[z] Atilio ea cunctatio stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit. Illi *igitur* duodĕcim cum canibus venaticis exiērunt. Aristĭdes æqualis fere fuit Themistŏcli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non miser (est)? Nihil labōras: *ideo* nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: *quare* eos infirmissimos esse volebant.

Lesson 62.

306. ☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the past tenses of the *indicative.*

(*a*) But the '*perfect,*' when it answers to our *perfect with* '*have,*' is not considered a *past* tense.

---

307. '*Ut*' with the *subjunct.*
(1) '*in order that;*' '*that;*' '*so that.*'
(2) the *infinitive* (expressing the *purpose*).
(3) '*as*' with *infinitive.*
(4) '*granting that;*' '*although.*'
(5) '*that,*' and carry '*not*' (after to *fear*).

(*a*) (*Ut* with the *indicative* is '*as,*' '*when,*' '*since,*' '*after,*' '*how.*')

(*b*) When *ut* introduces a *purpose,* the subjunctive verb will be construed by '*may,*' '*might.*' When it signifies a *consequence* (which it regularly does after '*so,*' '*such*'), the subjunctive verb is construed by the *indicative:* but the *imperfect* by the English perfect.

Exercise 62.

Obs. possim (*is, it,* &c.) = '*can*' or '*may.*'
possem (*es, et,* &c.) = '*could*' or '*might.*'

308. (1) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab aliis *laudentur.* Stellarum *tanta* multitudo est, *ut* numerari *non possint.* In summis Alpibus[a] tantum est frigus, *ut* nix ibi nun-

---

[z] Stare magno, *to cost* a man *dear.* Magno agrees with *pretio* (price) understood.

[a] *On the top of the Alps. Summus, imus, medius, primus, extremus, reliquus,* &c., agreeing with nouns, are generally construed

quam *liquescat.* Hominis corpus celsum et erectum est, ut cœlum intueri possit.

Ursi per hiemem tam gravi somno premuntur, *ut* nē vulneribus quidem excitentur. In Indiâ serpentes ad tantam magnitudinem adolescunt, *ut* integros hauriant cervos, taurosque.

(2) Vēnit (*he is come*) ut claudat (*to shut*), &c.

Enītar *ut vincam.* Magnopĕre te hortor, *ut* hos de philosophiâ libros studiōse *legas.* Capram monet, *ut* in pratum *descendat.* Ante senectutem curavi, *ut* bene vivĕrem. Formīca sitiens ad fontem descendit, *ut* bibĕret.

(3) No one is *so* good, *ut* nunquam *peccet* (as *never* to sin).

Quis *tam* demens est, *ut* suâ voluntate mœreat? Nulla anus *tam* delīra est, *ut* hæc *credat.*

(4) *Ut desint* vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. *Ut* circumspiciamus omnia, quæ populo grata atque jucunda sunt, nihil tam populare quam concordiam reperiemus.

☞ For *ut* after *to fear*, see Lesson 66.

Lesson 63.

309. *Nē* with *subjunctive,*

(1) { '*lest*,' / '*that*,' and carry '*not*' on to the verb.
(2) '*not*' with the *infinitive.*
(3) '*not*' with *imperat.* or *subjunct.* used *imperatively.*
(4) '*that*' after to *fear.*

Exercise 63.

(1) I did it, nē *that*, vidĕret *he might* not *see*, &c.

310. (1) Palpĕbræ molles sunt, *ne premant* ocŭlum. Gallīnæ avesque relĭquæ pennis fovent pullos, ne frigŏre

---

by *substantives*, followed by a genitive case. Imus mons, *the bottom* or *foot of the mountain.* Reliqua Ægyptus, *the rest of Egypt.* Sapientia prima, *the beginning of wisdom.* In *extremo* tertio *libro*, *at the end of the* third book.

lædantur. Nix segĕtes opĕrit, *ne* frigŏre *absumantur.* Cave *ne* incognita pro cognitis *habeas.* Cave *ne* quid temere *dicas* aut *facias* contra potentes. Oculi palpĕbris sunt muniti, *nē* quid incĭdat. Alexander edixit, *nē* quis [b] ipsum, præter Apellem, pingĕret.

(2) *I advised him* ne *not,* iret *to go.*

Monuit capram, *ne* in pratum descendĕret. Trebonio mandaverat, *ne* per vim Massiliam [c] expugnari *pateretur.* Monui puerum, *ne* fabis vesceretur.

(3) *Not* with imperatives is *nē,*
A '*non*' is hateful then to see.

Crabrōnes *nē irrita. Ne* reprehende errores aliorum, sed emendes potius tuos. Diu *ne* morare in conclavibus modo dealbatis [d]. *Ne tentes,* quod effici non possit.

☞ For *ne* with *to fear,* see Lesson 66.

Lesson 64.

311. '*Quin,*' with *subj.*
(1) '*but*' (as used after *negatives*).
(2) the *relative* with *not.*
(3) '*as not*' with *infinitive.*
(4) '*that*' after *doubt, deny,* in *negative* sentences.
(5) '*from*' or '*without*' with the *participial substantive,* after *escape, prevent,* &c.

Exercise 64.

(1) *a.* '*But*' very nearly coincides with *quin;* though we now *more* commonly use some of the other forms here given.
(2) There is nobody, quin putet { *but* thinks. / *who* does *not* think.
(3) *b.* No one is *so* mad, quin (*as not*) putet (*to think*), &c.
(4) { I don't *deny* / I don't *doubt* } quin *that* (or, *but that*) turpe sit, *it is disgraceful.*
(5) *She never saw him,* quin, *without,* ridēret, *laughing.*
She could not be restrained, quin, *from,* ridēret, *laughing.*

[b] When *ne* is construed *that, quis, quid* (*anybody, anything*) must be construed *nobody, nothing.*
[c] *Marseilles.* [d] *That have been lately white-washed.*

312. Nullum animalium genus adeo ferox est, *quin*[e] vehementer *amet* prolem suam. Nulla fere pars est pecŏrum, *quin*[f] ad commŏda nostra facta sit. Vere sapiens nunquam dubitabit, *quin*[g] immortalis *sit* animus. Ex odoratu et adspectu pomorum dubitare non possŭmus, *quin* hominibus ea donata sint. Nemo est tam bonus ac provĭdus, *quin* interdum *peccet*. Caius prohiberi non potuit, *quin* (311, 5) *erumpĕret*. Non dubito, *quin ascenderis* murum. Nemo erit tam stultus, *quin* (311, 3) hæc *fateatur*. Non possum pro dignitate vivere, *quin* (311, 5) alterŭtram partem *offendĕrem*. Negari non potest, *quin* turpius *sit* fallĕre quam falli. Nihil in rerum naturâ invenītur, *quin* sapientissime institutum *sit*. Qui temere omnibus credit, effugĕre non potest[h], *quin* sæpius fallatur. Infesta concio vix inhiberi potuit, *quin* protĭnus saxa in Polemōnem *jacĕret*. Timoleontem mater, post fratris necem, nunquam adspexit, *quin* eum fratricīdam impiumque *compellaret*.

Lesson 65.

313. After verbs of *hindering*, 'quomĭnus' with the subjunct. is more common than *ne*. It may generally be translated by '*from*,' the verb being turned into the *participial substantive*: but after '*refuse*,' by the *infinitive*.

Exercise 65.

(1) *Nothing deterred him,* quomĭnus faceret (*from doing*) &c.
(2) *I will not refuse,* quomĭnus faciam (*to do*) &c.

314. Nihil impĕdit, *quominus* id facere possīmus. Non deterret sapientem mors, *quomĭnus*[i] in omne

---

[e] *As not to love, &c.* [f] *That is not made.*
[g] *That the mind is.* [h] *Cannot avoid being often deceived.*
[i] *Does not deter, &c. from forwarding the interests of the commonwealth, and of his own* (friends). Consulere alicui = *to consult a man's welfare, to forward his interests.*

tempus reipublicæ, [k] suisque *consulat.* Rebus terrēnis multa externa, *quomĭnus perficiantur,* possunt obsistere. Quid obstat, *quomĭnus* Caius *sit* beatus? Epaminondas non *recusavit, quomĭnus* legis pœnam *subīret.* Non me *terrēbis, quomĭnus* illud *faciam. Prohibēre* Romanos, *quomĭnus* frumentum *sumĕrent,* non poterant. Non me *impedies, quomĭnus* ei pecuniam illam *numerem.*

(Note. Literally, 'quo minus' = *by which the less,* or *so that the less.* Caio nihil obstat, *quo minus sit beatus,* is literally "Nothing stands in the way of Caius, *by which* he should be *the less* happy.")

Lesson 66.

315. After words of '*fearing,*' '*ne*' and '*ut*' appear to change meanings: ne = *that* (or *lest*): ut = *that* —*not.* (Also the *subjunct. present* must generally be construed by the *future.*)

Vereor *ne,* I fear he *will;* or *lest he should, &c.*
Vereor *ut,* / Vereor *ne non,* } I fear he *will not;* or *lest he should not.*

Exercise 66.

316. Vereor *ne* labores tuos *augeam.* Pavor ceperat milites, *ne* mortifĕrum *esset* vulnus Scipionis. Homo scelestus semper verētur, *ne* peccata sua *patefiant.* Imprŏbi semper sunt in *metu, ne* pœnâ *afficiantur* aliquando. Vereor, *nē* brevi tempore fames in urbe *sit.* Verebamini, *nē non* id facerem. Vereor, *nē* consolatio *nulla* vera possit reperiri. Timeo, *nē non* impĕtrem. Metuebant, *nē* dolorem ferre *non* possent.

Timeo, *ut* labores tantos *sustineas.* Avarus semper veretur, *ut* satis habeat. Vereor, *ut* pax firma *sit.* Ignavus semper metuit, *ut sustineat* labores.

---

[k] Sui = a man's dependents, a man's friends.

a. In English we often leave out the conjunction '*that*' after a verb of *fearing*.

Metuo, ne artificium tuum tibi parum *prosit.*
I fear thy contrivance will profit thee little.

Lesson 67.

ON INTERROGATIVES.

317. All interrogatives take the indicative, *when the question* is put *directly:* they then stand at the head of a principal sentence, and are followed, of course, by a note of interrogation.

a. Num, an, and *nĕ* (which is always *appended* to another word), are not construed in direct sentences.

b. Num (in direct questions) expects the answer '*no.*' *An* expects the answer '*no,*' and expresses *impatience, indignation,* &c.[1] *Nonnĕ* expects the answer '*yes.*'

c. The force of '*an*' may generally be given by adding '*why*' or '*then*' to the question.

An credis? { *Why,* do you believe . . . . ?
{ Do you believe *then* . . . . ?

Exercise 67.

318. *Quis* non paupertatem *extimescit? Unde* lucem suam *habet* luna? *Quid* interest[m] inter hominem et bestiam? *Quid* feret crastĭnus dies? *Quare* vitia sua nemo confitetur? *Cur* te *excrucias? Quid* rides?

Ubi aut *qualis* est tua mens? *Potesnĕ* dicere?—*Num* sola maris aqua *est* salsa? *Visne* miser esse? *Estne* animus immortalis? *Nonne* poētæ post mortem nobilitari *volunt? Num scimus,* quo se conferant* aves peregrinantes? *An* tu esse me tristem *putas? An* quisquam *potest* sine perturbatione mentis irasci?

Obs. *Ne* is often appended to the other particles; *numnĕ, annĕ,* &c.

---

[1] A question with *nĕ* may be such as to make us confidently expect '*yes*' or '*no*' for the answer. But the answer is then suggested by the *nature* of the question, not by the *form* of it.

[m] *What difference is there?* intersum.

* *Betake themselves.*

Lesson 68.

319. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when they ask *indirectly* or *doubtfully;* especially when another verb goes before the question.

(*a*) Such verbs are ***ask, doubt, try, not know;*** it is ***uncertain,*** &c.

(*b*) ***Num, an, nĕ,*** in a dependent sentence, are '***whether;***' and '***num***' does not imply that the answer '***no***' is expected.

(*c*) ***An*** is never used by Cicero in a single indirect question.

Exercise 68.

320. *Quis* enumeret[n] artium multitudinem? Nescio, *unde* sol ignem *habeat.* Dic mihi, *quem* sol nobis *adferat* usum. Nescīmus, *quid* serus vesper *advecturus sit*[o]. *Quid futurum sit,* nescīmus. *Quid* vere nobis *prosit*[p], non semper intelligĭmus. Olim quæstio erat, *num* terra rotunda *esset. Num* ægrotum interrogabis, *an* sanari *velit?* Cogita tecum, *an* gratiam *retuleris,* quibus gratiam debes. Quærĭtur[q] unquam*ne fuerint* monocerōtes. Utrum* velis, elige. Non me terrebis, quomĭnus, *utrum* velim, elĭgam. Quid dicam nescio.

Lesson 69.

321. In *double questions* either

(1) The first is introduced by ***num, utrum,*** or the appended ***nĕ,*** and the second by ***an*** (***or***): or,

(2) The ***first*** question has ***no interrogative adverb;*** the ***second, an,*** or the appended ***nĕ.***

---

[n] ***Who can reckon up?*** [o] ***Will bring.***

[p] Quid vere prosit (prosum) nobis? ***what is really beneficial to us?***

[q] It is sought = ***it is a question,*** or ***a disputed point:*** monocerotes, ***unicorns.***

* Neut. of ***uter.***

Exercise 69.

322. (1) [*Direct.*] *Utrum*[r] major est sol, *an* minor, quam terra? Casu*nĕ* mundus est effectus, *an* vi divinâ? *Num* sol mobilis est, *an* immobilis? Sumus*ne* mortales, *an* immortales? [*Indirect* or *dependent.*] Quæritur, unus*ne* sit mundus *an* plures? Nihil rĕfert[s], *utrum sit* aureum poculum, *an* vitreum.

(2) [*Direct.*] Uter est infelicior, cæcus *an* surdus? *Utrum* est pretiosius, aurum *an* argentum? [*Indirect.*] Stellarum numerus par[t] *an* impar *sit*, incertum est. Hominibus prodesse[u] natura jubet: servi liber*ine sint*, quid refert[v]? Dic mihi, æstate[w] *grandinet, an* hieme. Multum interest[x], valentes imbecill*ine* simus.

a. Necne in the second question is '*or not.*'

Lesson 70.

323. (*Some* conjunctions *that always take the* subjunctive.)

Utinam, *would that.*
O si, (*O! if*) *O! that, would that.*
licet, *although.*
quasi, tanquam, *as if.*
dum, modo, dummŏdo, *provided; if only.*
quamvis, *however-much, however.*

---

[r] *Is the sun . . . ?*
[s] *It makes no difference.*
[t] *Even:* impar, *odd.*
[u] Prosum.
[v] *What matters it,* or, *what does it signify whether,* &c.?
[w] *In the summer.*
[x] *It makes a great difference.*

Exercise 70.

Note.—With most of these conjunctions, the *present* (subjunctive) must be construed by a *past* tense.

324. *Utinam* pacis amor omnibus inspirari *possit! Utinam* ense nullus magistratus *egeat! O si* quisque virtutem *colat! O si* omnes *cogitent*, mediocritatem in omnibus rebus esse optimam! Animalibus brutis nulla futuri temporis cognitio est, *licet sit* aliqua præsentis et præteriti. Improbus ita vivit, *quasi nesciat*, rationem vitæ sibi esse reddendam. Nemo, *quamvis sit* locŭples, aliorum ope carēre potest. Nulla est regio, quæ non cultores suos, *dummŏdo* laborare *velint*, alat. Ita fac omnia, *tanquam spectet* aliquis. Si quis nimis obscure dicit, perinde fere est, *ac si taceat*. Utinam hoc verum sit. Sic agis, *quasi* me ames.

a. When *provided only* is to be followed by *not*, *nē* is used.

Sit summa in jure dicendo severitas, *dummŏdo* ea *ne varietur* gratiâ.

Lesson 71.

ON PARTICIPLES.

325. Participles *assume* an assertion, which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so.

> Thus, 'I went to Henry, *being ill*,' might be expressed (according to the meaning) by 'I went to Henry, *who was ill*:' 'I went to Henry, *because he was ill*:' 'I went to Henry, *though he was ill*,' &c.

326. Translate the participles in the following examples by *relative* sentences.

EXAMPLE, (1) *The boy* ridens, { *who laughs;* or *is laughing.* / *who was laughing.*

(2) *The boy* risurus, { *who is going to laugh,* (or) *who will laugh.*

(3) *The boy* amatus, *who is* (or *was*) *loved.*

(4) *The boy* amandus, *who ought to be loved.*

327. If no substantive is expressed, supply a *man, men;* or *he, she, those,* &c.

(5) ridentis, of *him* who laughs; or, *of a man* who laughs.

(6) ridentium, of *those* who laugh; or, *of men* who laugh.

328. With a neuter plural participle, '*things*' is to be supplied; but for '*things which* or *that,*' it is generally better to use '*what*' only.

(7) præteritura, { *things that* will pass away. / *what* will pass away.

Exercise 71.

329. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo *duraturam* pervenient. Nemo, cunctam *intuens* terram, de divinâ providentiâ dubitabit. Hæ sunt divitiæ certæ, semper *permansuræ.* Sapiens bona semper *placitura* laudat. Omnes aliud[y] *agentes,* aliud *simulantes*[z] improbi sunt. PISISTRATUS HOMERI libros, *confusos* antea, disposuisse dicitur. Male *agentis* (327, 5) animus nunquam est sine metu. Garrulus tacere nequit[a] sibi *commissa* (328, 7). Adulator aut laudat *vituperanda,* aut vituperat *laudanda.*

Lesson 72.

330. Construe the participles in the following Exercise by verbs with '*when,*' '*as.*'

---

[y] The first *aliud* must be construed '*one thing:*' the second '*another.*'

[z] Put in a '*but*' before simulantes.

[a] Nequeo, nequis, nequit.

(1) ridens, { *when he is* (or *was*) *laughing.*
as he is (or *was*) *laughing.*

331. In a sentence with *when* we often omit the auxiliary verb: hence

(2) *ridens* may be construed '*when laughing.*'

332. If the participle stands alone, '*he,*' '*they,*' '*a man,*' '*one,*' '*men,*' &c. must be supplied as the nom. to the verb.

(3) ridenti, { when *he* is laughing.
when *one* is laughing.

(4) ridentibus, when *men* (or *they*) are laughing.

Exercise 72.

333. Leo *esuriens* rugit. XERXES a Græcis *victus* in Persiam refūgit. *Esurienti* (332, 3) gratior est cibus. *Sudanti* (332, 3) frigida potio perniciosissima est. DIONYSIUS tyrannus, Syracūsis *expulsus*, Corinthi pueros docebat. *Aranti* QUINCTIO CINCINNATO nuntiatum est, eum Dictatōrem esse factum. Hæc poma *sedens* decerpsi. Leōnes *satiati* innoxii sunt. Ne mente quidem recte uti possŭmus, multo cibo et potione *implēti*. Alit lectio ingenium, et studio *fatīgatum* reficit. Elephantes nemĭni nocent, nisi *lacessīti*.

Lesson 73.

334. Construe the following participles by *verbs* with '*if.*'

(1) ridens, { *if he* laughs.*
if a man (or *one*) *laughs.*

(2) amatus, { *if I am loved; if I were loved.*
if I had been loved.

---

* The nom. to be used will be, *I, we, you, they,* &c. according to the person of the verb.

Exercise 73.

335. Quis est qui, totum diem *jacŭlans*, non aliquando collineet[b]? Equum *empturus*, cave nē decipiaris. Hostes, hanc *adepti* victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confīdent. *Victi* hostes in Persiam refugient. *Admonĭtus* (334, 2) venissem. *Liberatus*, rus ex urbe evolabo. Româ *expulsus* Carthagine pueros docēbo.

Lesson 74.

336. Construe the following participles by verbs with *because, for, since;* or by the *participial substantive* with *from* or *through.*

dubitans
(1) *because I doubt.*
(2) *for I doubt.*
(3) *since I doubt.*
(4) *from doubting.*
(5) *through doubting.*

Exercise 74.

337. Nihil affirmo, *dubitans* plerumque, et mihi ipse[c] *diffīdens*. Hostes hanc *adepti* (336, 4) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidebant. Sine aquâ anătes degere non possunt, magnam victûs partem in aquâ *quærentes*. Respondent se perfidiam *verĭtos* revertisse. Stellæ nobis parvæ videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis *disjunctæ*. Cantus olorīnus recte fabulōsus habētur, nunquam *audītus*.

Lesson 75. [*See note, p.* 104.]

338. Construe the following participles by verbs with *though, although.*

(1) ridens, *though he laughs.*

amatus,
(2) *though he is loved.*
(3) *though he was loved.*
(4) *even though he should be loved.*

[b] *Pres. subj.* construe by *pres. indic.*

[c] Construe mihi *myself*, and take no further notice of *ipse.*

339. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*. Hence we may sometimes construe

(5) ridens, *though laughing.*
(6) amatus, *though loved.*

Exercise 75.

340. Homines non statim pœnis afficiuntur, quotidie *delinquentes*. Multa transīmus ante ocŭlos *posĭta*. Ocŭlus, se non *videns*, alia videt. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum *cupientes* tenēre nequeamus. Scripta tua jam diu *exspectans* [d], flagitare non audeo. Quis hoc non intelligit, Verrem *absolūtum* (338, 4) tamen ex manibus populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse? Omnia magnâ voce *dicens*, simulabat tantum se furĕre. Ad cœnam *vocatus*, nondum vēnit.

Lesson 76. [*Note, p.* 104.]

341. Construe the following past participles by *after*, with a verb or participial substantive.

(*Act.*) passus, { (1) *after he has suffered.* (2) *after he had suffered.* (3) *after suffering.*

(*Pass.*) amatus, { (4) *after he was* (or *has been*) *loved.* (5) *after he had been loved.* (6) *after having been loved.*

Exercise 76.

342. Josephus in Ægypto, multa mala *perpessus* (341, 3), ad summos honōres evectus est. Israëlītæ, Ægypto *egressi*, quadraginta annos in Arabiâ sunt commorati. Pleræque scribuntur orationes *habitæ* [e] jam, non ut habeantur. Dionysius, a Syracusis *expulsus* [f], Corinthi pueros docebat. Alexander Ab-

---

[d] Use the perf. definite, '*have been expecting.*'
[e] Habere orationem, to *deliver* a speech.
[f] Construe first by (341, 4); then by (341, 6).

DOLONIMUM diu *contemplatus* interrogavit, quâ patientiâ inopiam tulisset. *Lauti*[g] cibum capiunt Germani.

Lesson 77.

343. Construe the following participles by verbs, and place '*and*' before the verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The participle is *generally* to be construed by the same tense as the other verb.

(1) Ridens *he laughs,* exclamat *and exclaims.*

(2) Ridens *he laughed,* exclamavit *and exclaimed.*

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum* lepŏrem, *he has seized* the hare, lacerat, and *is mangling* it. (He mangles the seized hare.)

Exercise 77.

344. Jussis divinis *obediens* virtuti *studet.* CRŒSUS, a Cyro *victus,* regno *spoliatus est.* Troja, equi lignei ope capta, incendio delēta est. Persæ mortuos cerâ *circumlĭtos*[h] condunt. Grues, quum loca calidiora *petentes* maria *transmittunt,* triangŭli efficiunt formam. Illud ipsum[i] non accidisset, si *quiescens* legibus *paruissem.* Cum legionĭbus *profectus*[k] celeriter *adero.* TITUS MANLIUS Gallum, in conspectu duorum exercituum *cæsum,* torque spoliavit. *Comprehensum* hominem Romam *ducēbant* (343, 3). Mulier ALCIBIADEM suâ veste *contectum* cremavit.

Lesson 78.

345. *Non* before a participle may be construed *without:* the participle being turned into the participial substantive.

non *without,* ridens *laughing.*

non *without,* { amatus *being loved.* / amatus *loving him.*

---

[g] Partic. from *lavare,* to *wash.*
[h] From *circumlinere.*
[i] Construe *ipse* by *even.*
[k] Proficisci.

Exercise 78.

346. *Non petens* regnum accepit. Romani Græcis *non rogati* ultro offĕrunt auxilium. Liberalitate utitur, se ipsum *non spolians*. Neminem in familiaritatem recipe *non cognĭtum*[1]. Multi homines vituperant libros *non intellectos*[1]. Benefĭcus est, qui non privatis commŏdis *permōtus*, alios adjŭvat.

347. Obs. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed in the same way: the substantive will be the nom. to the verb; or the acc. after it[m].

Thus, Tarquinio regnante,	*when* Tarquinius *was king*.
te sedente,	*as* you were sitting.
captâ Tyro,	*after* Tyre was taken.
migraturis apibus,	*when* the bees are going to swarm.
fele comprehensâ,	*if* the cat is caught.
ademto pomo,	*because* his apple was taken away.
radīce succisâ,	*though* the root was cut.
fasce *sublato*, redit,	he *takes up* the bundle AND returns.
te *non salutato*,	*without* saluting you.

348. Participles may often be construed by *substantives* of a kindred meaning: Thus,

For	*We may say,*
Ciconiæ redeuntes, The *returning* storks,	The *return* of the storks.
Januario *addito*, By January *added*,	By the *addition* of January.
Leges *violatæ*, The *violated* laws,	The *violation* of the laws.
Vere appropinquante, Spring *approaching*,	On the *approach* of spring.

---

[1] Use *act. partic.*

[m] It may sometimes be the accusative after the verb; because '*the bundle being taken by him*' = '*the bundle was taken up by him*;' which may be turned into '*he* took up *the bundle*.'

APPENDIX.

* The articles that have an asterisk before them, are not to be learnt till the other articles are known perfectly.

TERMINATIONS of SUBSTANTIVES and ADJECTIVES.

		Sing.				*Plur.*			
	N.V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.	N.V.	G.	D.Abl.	Acc.
1.	ă	æ	æ	am	ā	æ	ārum	īs	ās
2.	ŭs, ĕr (um *neut.*)	ī	ō	um	ō	ī	ōrum	īs	ōs
3.	various (generally *not* containing the unaltered root)	ĭs	ī	em (im)	ĕ (ī)	ēs	um ium	ĭbŭs	ēs
4.	ŭs (*neut.* u)	ūs	ī	um	ū	ūs	uum	ĭbŭs ŭbŭs	ūs
5.	ēs	ēī	ēĭ	em	ē	ēs	ērum	ēbŭs	ēs

☞ Obs. *In Neuters,* Acc. *is like* Nom., *and both in the plur. end* in ă.

* 2. The Vocative is always like the nominative, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. *ĕ*. Proper names in *ius,* with *filius, genius,* contract *ie* into *i*.

3. Neuters in *e, al, r,* have Abl. *i,* N. plur. *ia,* G. plur. *ium*.

* 4. (1) Nouns in *es, is, er,* not increasing in the gen., make Gen. pl. *ium*.

But vates, proles, juvĕnis, senex, canis,
Take um; *with* pater, frater, mater, panis.

(2) Monosyllables take Gen. pl. *ium*. But the following, with a few more, take *um*:

Dux, grex,
Vox, lex,
Pes, prex,
Fur, rex,
Mos, fraus,
Flos, laus.

(3) Nouns in *s*, *x*, after a consonant, take Gen. pl. *ium*.

* 5. The fourth declension is a *contracted* form of the third declension: G. *ūis*, ūs. Abl. *ū*, ū, &c.

(1) The following nouns of the *fourth* have Abl. *ŭbus*:

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus *add, and* artus;
Tribus, lacus, specus *too, with* veru, pecu, partus.

(2) Neuters in *u* have gen. *us*, dat. *u*, pl. *ua, uum*, &c.

* 6. In the fifth declension *e* of G. and D. *is long*, if it follows a vowel; *short*, if it follows a consonant. (*faciēi, fidēi.*)

7. EXAMPLES.

Sing.	I. (*table*)	II. (*boy*)	III. (*father*)	IV. (*chariot*)	V. (*day*)
Nom. *the*	mensa	puer	pater	currŭs	dies
Gen. *of the*	mensæ	pueri	patris	currūs	diēi
Dat. *to* or *for the*	mensæ	puero	patri	currui	diei
Acc. *the*	mensam	puerum	patrem	currum	diem
Voc. *O*	mensa	puer	pater	currus	dies
Abl. *by, with the* &c.	mensā	puero	patre	curru	diē
Plur.					
Nom. Voc. *the* / *O the*	mensæ	pueri	patres	currūs	dies
Gen. *of the*	mensārum	puerorum	patrum	currŭum	dierum
Dat. Abl. *to, for the* / *by, with the*	mensis	pueris	patribus	currĭbus	diebus
Acc. *the*	mensas	pueros	patres	currus	dies.

Sing.	I. (*hour*)	II. (*food*)	III. (*cloud*)	IV. (*fruit*)	V. (*thing*)
Nom. *the*	hora	cibus	nubes	fructŭs	res
Gen. *of the*	horæ	cibi	nubis	fructūs	rēi
Dat. *to* or *for the*	horæ	cibo	nubi	fructui	rei
Acc. *the*	horam	cibum	nubem	fructum	rem
Voc. *O*	hora	cibe	nubes	fructus	res
Abl. *by, with the* &c.	horā	cibo	nube	fructu	re
Plur.					
Nom. Voc. *the* / *O the*	horæ	cibi	nubes	fructūs	res
Gen. *of the*	horarum	ciborum	nubium	fructŭum	rerum
Dat. Abl. *to, for the* / *by, with the*	horis	cibis	nubibus	fructibus	rebus
Acc. *the*	horas	cibos	nubes	fructūs	res.

NEUTER NOUNS.

	Sing.	II. (*egg*)	III. (*song*)	IV. (*horn*)
Nom.	*the*	ovum	carmen	cornu
Acc.	*the*			
Voc.	*O the*			
Gen.	*of the*	ovi	carmin*is*	corn*ûs*
Dat.	*to, for the*	ovo	carmin*i*	cornu
Abl.	*by, with the* &c.	ovo	carmin*e*	cornu
	Plur.			
Nom.	*the*	ov*a*	carmin*a*	corn*ua*
Acc.	*the*			
Voc.	*O the*			
Gen.	*of the*	ov*orum*	carmin*um*	corn*uum*
Dat.	*to, for the*	ov*is*	carmin*ibus*	corn*ibus.*
Abl.	*by, with the*			

8. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

I.

2.	1.	2. (*neut.*)
Bonus,	bonă,	bonum,
Boni,	bonæ,	boni,
&c.	&c.	&c.
Or,		
Unus,	ună,	unum,
Unĭus *,		
Unī,		
Unum,	unam,	unum,
&c.	&c.	&c.

II.

2.	1.	2. (*neut.*)
tenĕr,	tenĕra,	tenĕrum,
tenĕri,	tenĕræ,	tenĕri,
&c.	&c.	&c.
Or,		
æger,	ægră,	ægrum,
ægri,	ægræ,	ægri,
&c.		

9. These adjectives are of the second declension in the *mas.* and *neut.*; of the first in the *fem.*

10. The following are declined like *unus.*

With *ius, i,* do nullus, ullus,
Totus, solus, uter,
Alter *but with shortened* i,
Alius, unus, neuter.

* *Solius* appears to have *i* short, though commonly considered as *long.*

11. Alius, *G.* alīus (= ali-ius). Neut. *aliud.*
Alter, *G.* alterīus. ——— Uter, *G.* utrīus.

ADJECTIVES OF *ONE* AND *TWO* TERMINATIONS

(which are all of the *third* declension).

12. [Adjectives in *is.*]—Adjectives in *is* have neut. *e;* Abl. *i.* Neut. plur. *ia;* G. *ium.*

13. [Comparatives in *or.*]—Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us;* Abl. *e* or *i.* Neut. plur. *a;* G. *um.*

14. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the *neut. sing.*, and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.* (except in Nom. sing.)

15. (*a*) They have Abl. *e* or *i.* Neut. plur. *ia*, G. *ium.*

For participles abl. *e* } is the more common.
For adjectives abl. *i* }

16. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of one or two terminations, are,—

	Two Termin.				*Comparatives.*				*One Termin.*			
	S.		P.		S.		P.		S.		P.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	M. F	N.	M. F. (N.)		M. F.	N.
N.V.	*is*	*e*	*es*	*ia*	or	*us*	*ores*	*ora*	———		*es*	*ia*
G.	*is*		*ium*		*oris*		*orum*		*is*		*ium*	
D.	*i*		*ibus*		*ori*		*oribus*		*i*		*ibus*	
Acc.	*em*	*e*	*es*	*ia*	*orem*	*us*	*ores*	*ora*	*em*	as *nom.*	*es*	*ia*
Abl.	*i*		*ibus*		*ore* (*ori*)		*oribus*		(*e*) or *i*		*ibus*	

17. An adjective must agree with its substantive in case, gender, and number.

18. EXAMPLES.

Singular.

	M. (*A good boy.*)	F. (*A good mother.*)	N. (*A good work.*)
N.	bonus puer	bona mater	bonum opus
G.	boni pueri	bonæ matris	boni opĕris
D.	bono puero	bonæ matri	bono operi
A.	bonum puerum	bonam matrem	bonum opus
V.	bone puer	bona mater	bonum opus
Ab.	bono puero	bonā matre	bono opere

Plural.

	M. (*Good boys.*)	F. (*Good mothers.*)	N. (*Good works.*)
N.	boni pueri	bonæ matres	bona opera
G.	bonorum puerorum	bonarum matrum	bonorum operum
D.	bonis pueris	bonis matribus	bonis operibus
A.	bonos pueros	bonas matres	bona opera
V.	boni pueri	bonæ matres	bona opera
Ab.	bonis pueris.	bonis matribus.	bonis operibus.

Singular.

	(*A green field.*)	(*A green herb.*)	(*Green grass.*)
N.	campus virĭdis	herba viridis	gramen viride
G.	campi viridis	herbæ viridis	graminis viridis
D.	campo viridi	herbæ viridi	gramini viridi
A.	campum viridem	herbam viridem	gramen viride
Ab.	campo viridi	herbā viridi	gramine viridi

Plural.

N.	campi virides	herbæ virides	gramina viridia
G.	camporum viridium	herbarum viridium	graminum viridium
D.	campis viridibus	herbis viridibus	graminibus viridibus
A.	campos virides	herbas virides	gramina viridia
Ab.	campis viridibus.	herbis viridibus.	graminibus viridibus.

Singular.

	(*A bold man.*)	(*A bold woman.*)	(*A bold animal.*)
N.	audax vir	audax femina	audax animal
G.	audācis viri	audacis feminæ	audacis animālis
D.	audaci viro	audaci feminæ	audaci animali
A.	audacem virum	audacem feminam	audax animal
Ab.	audaci viro	audaci feminā	audaci animali

Plural.

N.	audaces viri	audaces feminæ	audacia animalia
G.	audacium virorum	audacium feminarum	audacium animalium
D.	audacibus viris	audacibus feminis	audacibus animalibus
A.	audaces viros	audaces feminas	audacia animalia
Ab.	audacibus viris.	audacibus feminis.	audacibus animalibus.

N.	duo (*two*)	duæ	duo	N.	tres (*three*)	tria
G.	duorum	duarum	duorum	G.	trium	
D. & Ab.	duobus	duabus	duobus	D.	trĭbus	
Acc.	duos (duo)	duas	duo.	Acc.	tres	tria.

19. THE VERB.

Terminations of the third persons of the Active Verb, &c. *

			1.	2.	3.	4.	Verb, *to defend.*
(1)	Present,		at,	et,	it,	it,	defends; is defending; does defend.
	Imperfect,	(R)	ābat,	ēbat,	ēbat,	iēbat,	was defending. (defended; did defend.)
	Future,	(R)	ābit,	ēbit,	et,	iet,	shall *or* will defend.
(2)	Perfect,	(r)	it,				defended; did defend; has defended.
	Pluperfect	(r)	ĕrat,				had defended.
	Future perf.	(r)	ĕrit,				shall *or* will have defended.
	Imperat. (pers. 2. R)		ā,	ē,	ĕ,	ī,	defend; do thou defend.
	Pres. subj.	(R)	et,	eat,	at,	iat,	may (*or* should) defend.
	Imperf. subj.	(R)	āret,	ērɐt,	ĕret,	īret,	might, should, would defend.
	Perf. subj.	(r)	ĕrit,				may (*or* should) have defended.
	Pluperf. subj.	(r)	isset,				might, should, would have defended.
	Infin. Pres. Imperf.	(R)	āre,	ēre,	ĕre,	īre,	to defend.
	Infin. Perf. Pluperf.	(r)	isse,				to have defended.
	Infin. Future,		part. in *rus* with *esse*,				to be going (*or* about) to defend.
	Gerunds,	(R)	andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi,	of defending.
	Supine,	(ρ)	um,				to defend.
	Part. Pres.	(R)	ans,	ens,	ens,	iens,	defending.
	Part. Fut.	(ρ)	ūrus,				going (*or* about) to defend.
	Passive Participles.						(*Passive Participles.*)
	Past partic.	(ρ)	us,				defended; being defended.
	Part. in dus,	(R)	andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus,	to be defended.

* R, r, ρ, stand respectively for '*root of present*,' '*root of perfect*,' '*root of supine*.' In repeating the table, the pupil should always say *which root* the termination is to be added to. Thus: '*Pluperfect; root of perfect; it.*'

☞ **Obs. 1.** *Shall,* in the first person, simply *foretells;* in the other persons, it *commands.*
Will, in the first person, declares the *speaker's intention* in a positive manner; in the other persons, it simply *foretells.*

* **Obs. 2.** The *Imperfect* is construed by the *perf.* when it expresses *habits* or *repeated* actions.

* **Obs. 3.** The pres. '*does* defend,' and the perf. '*did* defend,' are used after *negative* words, and in *questions* and *strong* affirmations.

* **Obs. 4.** Remember that '*am come*' is perf. act.: '*is building*' pres. pass.: '*is built*' perf. pass.

* **Obs. 5.** The *pres. subj.* is often to be construed by *should, would;* and, in *questions,* by *can, shall,* &c.

* **Obs. 6.** The *imperf. subj.* is sometimes to be construed by *should have, would have;* and, in *questions,* by *could,* &c.

* **Obs. 7.** In sentences with *if, when, until,* &c. a *future* is often to be construed by a *present,* and a *future perfect* by a *perfect.* This is when the verb of the principal sentence is *future.*

20. Terminations of the persons.

	(*Sing.*)			(*Plur.*)		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Active,	o, i, m,	s,	t,	mus,	tis,	nt.
Passive,	r,	ris, / re,	tur,	mur,	mĭni,	ntur.

(1) This does not apply to the *Imperative.*

(2) *Perf. indic. Act.* has 2 sing. and plur. *isti, istis,* respectively, and 3 plur. *ērunt* or *ēre.*

21. (ACTIVE VOICE.) INDICATIVE

N.B. (R) means root of the present; for instance, from *amo*, '*am*:' (r) means root of the perfect; for instance, '*amar*:' (ρ) means root of supine; for instance, '*amat*.'

PRESENT, [*defend; do defend; am defending.*]

am-	ō[k],	ās,	ăt,	āmŭs,	ātĭs,	ant.
mon-	eō,	ēs,	ĕt,	ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.
reg-	ō,	ĭs,	ĭt,	ĭmŭs,	ĭtĭs,	unt.
aud-	iō,	īs,	ĭt,	īmŭs,	ītĭs,	iunt.

IMPERFECT, (R) [*was defending;* often, *defended* or *did defend.*]

am-	ābam,	ābās,	ābăt,	ābāmŭs,	ābātĭs,	ābant.
mon-	ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.
reg-	ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbăt,	ēbāmŭs,	ēbātĭs,	ēbant.
aud-	iēbam,	iēbās,	iēbăt,	iēbāmŭs,	iēbātĭs,	iēbant.

FUTURE, (R) [*shall* or *will defend.*]

am-	ābō,	ābĭs,	ābĭt,	ābĭmŭs,	ābĭtĭs,	ābunt.
mon-	ēbō,	ēbĭs,	ēbĭt,	ēbĭmŭs,	ēbĭtĭs,	ēbunt.
reg-	am,	ēs,	ĕt,	ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.
aud-	iam,	iēs,	iĕt,	iēmŭs,	iētĭs,	ient.

PERFECT, [*defended; did defend—have defended* † (perf. def.)]

amāv-
monu-
rex-(=regs)
audīv-
} ī, istī, ĭt, ĭmŭs, istĭs, { ērunt, *or* ērĕ. }

PLUPERFECT, (r) [*had defended.*]

amāv-
monu-
rex-
audīv-
} ĕram, ĕrās, ĕrăt, ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT, (r) [*shall* or *will have defended.*]

amāv-
monu-
rex-
audīv-
} ĕro, { ĕrĭs, *or* ĕris, } ĕrĭt, { ĕrĭmŭs[l], *or* ĕrīmŭs, } { ĕrĭtĭs, *or* ĕrītĭs, } ĕrint.

IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE, (R) [*defend;—do you defend.*]

	2.	3.	2 pl.	3 pl.
am-	ā, ātō,	ātō,	ātĕ, ātōtĕ,	anto.
mon-	ē, ētō,	ētō,	ētĕ, ētōtĕ,	ento.
reg-	ĕ, ĭtō,	ĭtō,	ĭtĕ, ĭtōtĕ,	unto.
aud-	ī, ītō,	ītō,	ītĕ, ītōtĕ,	iunto.

[k] *O*, of verbs, is sometimes *short*. In the golden age, it first (after the comic writers) appears short in Ovid, *e. g.* in nesciŏ, rependŏ, putŏ, estŏ.

[l] See note, p. 118.

† The perfect *definite* (perf. with *have*) is used of an action *done* in

MOOD. (PASSIVE VOICE.)

(OBS. ☞ Passive adds *r* to the tenses that end in *o*; changes *m* into *r* in those that end in *m*. OBS. The (e) after 2nd pers. sing. means that the termin. is *re* or *ris*.)

PRESENT, [*am defended—is building.*]

am-	ŏr,	ārĭs(e),	ātŭr,	āmŭr,	āmĭnī,	antŭr.
mon-	eŏr,	ērĭs(e),	ētŭr,	ēmŭr,	ēmĭnī,	entŭr.
reg-	ŏr,	ĕrĭs(e),	ĭtŭr,	ĭmŭr,	ĭmĭnī,	untŭr.
aud-	iŏr,	īrĭs(e),	ītŭr,	īmŭr,	īmĭnī,	iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT, [*was defended* (not strictly imperf.)—*was building.*]

am-	ābăr,	ābārĭs(e),	ābātŭr,	ābāmŭr,	ābāmĭnī,	ābantŭr.
mon-	ēbăr,	ēbārĭs(e),	ēbātŭr,	ēbāmŭr,	ēbāmĭnī,	ēbantŭr.
reg-	ēbăr,	ēbārĭs(e),	ēbātŭr,	ēbāmŭr,	ēbāmĭnī,	ēbantŭr.
aud-	iēbăr,	iēbārĭs(e),	iēbātŭr,	iēbāmŭr,	iēbāmĭnī,	iēbantŭr.

FUTURE, [*shall* or *will be defended.*]

am-	ābŏr,	ābĕrĭs(e),	ābĭtŭr,	ābĭmŭr,	ābĭmĭnī,	ābuntŭr.
mon-	ēbŏr,	ēbĕrĭs(e),	ēbĭtŭr,	ēbĭmŭr,	ēbĭmĭnī,	ēbuntŭr.
reg-	ăr,	ērĭs(e),	ētŭr,	ēmŭr,	ēmĭnī,	entŭr.
aud-	iăr,	iērĭs(e),	iētŭr,	iēmŭr,	iēmĭnī,	ientŭr.

PERFECT, [*was defended; have been defended—is built.*]

* Made up of the *past partic.* with *sum*—(sometimes *fui*).

PLUPERFECT, [*had been defended.*]

Made up of *past partic.* and *ĕram*—(sometimes *fŭeram*).

FUTURE PERFECT, [*shall* or *will have been defended.*]

Made up of *past partic.* with *ĕro*—(sometimes *fŭĕro*).

MOOD.

(R.) [*be defended:* 2 sing. like *Infin. act.*]

2.	3.	2 pl.	3 pl.
ārĕ, ātŏr,	ātŏr,	āmĭnī, āmĭnŏr,	antŏr.
ērĕ, ētŏr,	ētŏr,	ēmĭnī, ēmĭnŏr,	entŏr.
ĕrĕ, ĭtŏr,	ĭtŏr,	ĭmĭnī, ĭmĭnŏr,	untŏr.
īrĕ, ītŏr,	ītŏr,	īmĭnī, īmĭnŏr,	iuntŏr.

---

a present time, (no matter of what *length,*) or *still continuing* in its completed state. *Am come* is the *perf. def.* of a neut. verb of motion.

N.B. Some grammarians, as in the later editions of King Edward VI.th's Latin Grammar, call the perfect with '*have,*' the perfect *indefinite.*

(ACTIVE VOICE.) SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT, (R) [*may, should defend.*]

am-	em,	ēs,	ĕt,	ēmŭs,	ētĭs,	ent.
mon-	eam,	eās,	eăt,	eāmŭs,	eātĭs,	eant.
reg-	am,	ās,	ăt,	āmŭs,	ātĭs,	ant.
aud-	iam,	iās,	iăt,	iāmŭs,	iātĭs,	iant.

IMPERFECT, (R) [*might, would, should defend.*]

am-	ārem,	ārēs,	ārĕt,	ārēmŭs,	ārētĭs,	ārent.
mon-	ērem,	ērēs,	ērĕt,	ērēmŭs,	ērētĭs,	ērent.
reg-	ĕrem,	ĕrēs,	ĕrĕt,	ĕrēmŭs,	ĕrētĭs,	ĕrent.
aud-	īrem,	īrēs,	īrĕt,	īrēmŭs,	īrētĭs,	īrent.

PERFECT, (r) [*may, should have defended.*]

amāv- monu- rex- audīv- ĕrim, { ĕrĭs, *or* ĕris, } ĕrĭt, { ĕrĭmŭs [1], *or* ĕrīmŭs, } { ĕrĭtĭs, *or* ĕrītĭs, } ĕrint.

PLUPERFECT, (r) [*might, should, would have defended.*]

amāv- monu- rex- audīv- issem, issēs, issĕt, issēmŭs, issētĭs, issent.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT, IMPERF. (R) [*to defend: to be defending.*]

1.	2.	3.	4.
ārĕ,	ērĕ,	ĕrĕ,	īrĕ.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, (r) [*to have defended.*] isse.

FUTURE, [*to be going*, or *about to defend.*] Part. of fut. (in *rus*) with *esse*.

PARTICIPLES, &c.

GERUNDS, (R) [*of &c. defending.*]

andi, endi, endi, iendi.

SUPINE, (root of its own,) [*to defend*—after verbs of *motion.*] um. [*to defend* *—after some adjectives.] u.

PARTIC. PRESENT, (R) [*defending.*]

ans, ens, ens, iens.

PARTIC. PERFECT, [*having defended.*] None. [Supplied by *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.* or by *abl. absolute.*]

PARTIC. FUTURE, (ρ) [*going* or *about to defend.*] ūrus.

---

* Often construed, *to be defended.*

[1] The old grammarians are at variance respecting the quantity of *i* in *rimus, ritis*, of *fut. perf.* and *perf. subj.* Poets use these syllables

MOOD. (PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT, [*may, should be defended.*]

am-	ĕr,	ērĭs(e),	ētŭr,	ēmŭr,	ēmĭnī,	entŭr.
mon-	eăr,	eārĭs(e),	eātŭr,	eāmŭr,	eāmĭnī,	eantŭr.
reg-	ăr,	ārĭs(e),	ātŭr,	āmŭr,	āmĭnī,	antŭr.
aud-	iăr,	iārĭs(e),	iātŭr,	iāmŭr,	iāmĭnī,	iantŭr.

IMPERFECT, [*might, would, should be defended.*]

am-	ārĕr,	ārērĭs(e),	ārētŭr,	ārēmŭr,	ārēmĭnī,	ārentŭr.
mon-	ērĕr,	ērērĭs(e),	ērētŭr,	ērēmŭr,	ērēmĭnī,	ērentŭr.
reg-	ĕrĕr,	ĕrērĭs(e),	ĕrētŭr,	ĕrēmŭr,	ĕrēmĭnī,	ĕrentŭr.
aud-	īrĕr,	īrērĭs(e),	īrētŭr,	īrēmŭr,	īrēmĭnī,	īrentŭr.

PERFECT, [*may, should have been defended.*]

Past partic. with *sim*—(sometimes *fŭĕrim*).

PLUPERFECT, [*might, should, would have been defended.*]

Past partic. with *essem*—(sometimes *fuissem*).

MOOD.

PRESENT, IMPERF. { [*to be defended.*]

1.	2.	3.	4.
ārī,	ērī,	ī,	irī.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, { [*to have been defended.*] Past partic. with *esse*—(sometimes *fuisse*).

FUTURE, [*to be going* or *about to be defended.*]
Supine (in *um*) with *iri*.

PARTICIPLES, &c.

PAST PARTIC. (ρ) { *defended.* / *being defended.* / *having been defended.* } us.

PARTIC. FUTURE (R.) (implying *duty, necessity*, &c.)
[*to be defended.*]

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus.

---

both as *long* and *short*, but the preponderance of usage appears to be in favour of ī, in both tenses. (Zumpt.) Grotefend marks *érimus*, &c.

22. Some verbs of the third end in *io*. They drop the *i* in the *imperative, infinitive,* and *imperfect subjunctive* of both voices.

			Imperat.	Infin.	Impf. Subj.
(*a*)	Active,	suscipio,	suscĭpe,	suscipĕre,	suscipĕrem.
	Passive,	suscipior,	suscipĕre,	suscīpi,	suscipĕrer.

(*b*) In the present of both voices they retain the *i* in the third person plural, and drop it in the other persons:

Active, suscipio, suscĭpis, ĭt, &c. 3 plur. *suscipiunt.*
Passive, suscipior, suscipĕris, ĭtur, &c. 3 plur. *suscipiuntur.*

Esse, *to be.* INDICATIVE.

Present (*I am*),	sum,	ĕs,	est,	sūmus,	estis, sunt.
Imperf. (*I was*),	ĕram,	eras,	erat,	erāmus,	erātis, erant.
Fut. (*I shall or will be*),	ero,	eris,	erit,	erĭmus,	erĭtis, erunt.
Imperat. (*be* thou),		ĕs (esto),	esto,	este (estote),	sunto.
Subj. Pres. (*I may be*),	sim,	sīs,	sit,	sīmus,	sītis, sint.
Subj. Imp. (*I might or could be*),	essem*,	esses,	esset,	essēmus,	essētis, essent.

Infin. esse: *perf.* fuisse: *fut.* fore *or* futūrum esse.
Perf. fui (*was, have been*). Tenses from r., regular.

23. PRONOUNS.

(*Personal* Pronouns.)

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
	N.	G.	D.	A. Abl.	N. Acc.	Gen.	D. Abl.
(*a*)	ego,	mei,	mihi,	me,	nos,	nostrum *or* nostri,	nōbis.
	tu,	tui,	tibi,	te,	vos,	vestrum *or* vestri,	vōbis.
	Sing. & Plur.	sui,	sibi,	se (sese).			

(*Possessive* Pronouns. All regular, except that instead of *mee* (voc. masc.) *mi* is used.)

(*b*)	(*mine*)	meus,	mea,	meum.	noster, nostra, nostrum (*ours*).
	(*thine*)	tuus,	tua,	tuum.	vester, vestra, vestrum (*yours*).

suus, sua, suum, { *his, hers, its;* or *his own, &c.* / *theirs;* or *their own, &c.*

---

* Forem, fores, &c. is also used as imperf. subj.

(*c*) (*Demonstrative.*)

[Hic (*this* *, *the latter*); ille (*that, the former*); is (*that*, antecedent to *qui*); ipse (*-self, myself, thyself, himself*, &c.); iste (*that, that of yours*); idem (*the same*).]

		N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	*m.*	hic,	hujus,	huic,	hunc,	hoc,
	f.	hæc,			hanc,	hac,
	n.	hoc,			hoc,	hoc.
Plur.	*m.*	hi,	horum,	his,	hos,	his.
	f.	hæ,	harum,		has,	
	n.	hæc,	horum,		hæc.	
Sing.	*m.*	is,	ejus,	ei,	eum,	eo,
	f.	ea,			eam,	eâ,
	n.	id,			id,	eo.
Plur.	*m.*	ii †,	eorum,	iis ‡,	eos,	iis ‡.
	f.	eæ,	earum,		eas,	
	n.	eă,	eorum,		eă.	
Sing.	*m.*	ille,	illīus,	illi,	illum,	illo,
	f.	illa,			illam,	illâ,
	n.	illud,			illud,	illo.
Plur.	*m.*	illi,	illorum,	illis,	illos,	illis.
	f.	illæ,	illarum,		illas,	
	n.	illă,	illorum,		illă.	
Sing.	*m.*	iste,	istīus,	isti,	istum,	istō,
	f.	ista,			istam,	istâ,
	n.	istud,			istud,	isto.
Plur.	*m.*	isti,	istorum,	istis,	istos,	istis.
	f.	istæ,	istarum,		istas,	
	n.	istă,	istorum,		istă.	
Sing.	*m.*	ipse,	ipsīus,	ipsi,	ipsum,	ipso,
	f.	ipsa,			ipsam,	ipsâ,
	n.	ipsum,			ipsum,	ipso,
Plur.	*m.*	ipsi,	ipsorum,	ipsis,	ipsos,	ipsis.
	f.	ipsæ,	ipsarum,		ipsas,	
	n.	ipsă,	ipsorum,		ipsă.	
Sing.	*m.*	īdem,	ejusdem,	eidem,	eundem,	eodem,
	f.	eădem,			eandem,	eâdem,
	n.	ĭdem,			ĭdem,	eodem.
Plur.	*m.*	iidem,	eorundem,	iisdem,	eosdem,	iisdem.
	f.	eædem,	earundem,		easdem,	
	n.	eădem,	eorundem,		eădem.	

* The pronouns that mean '*that*,' become *he, she, it*, &c. when they agree with *man, woman*, or *thing* understood.

† Or *ei*. ‡ Or *eis*.

(*d*) (*Relative.*)

		N.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	*m.*	qui,	cujus,	cui,	quem,	quo,
	f.	quæ,			quam,	quâ,
	n.	quod,			quod,	quo.
Plur.	*m.*	qui,	quorum,	quĭbus,	quos,	quĭbus.
	f.	quæ,	quarum,		quas,	
	n.	quæ,	quorum,		quæ,	

(*e*) The interrogative pronoun is,

(1) quis, quæ, quid (generally used as a *substantive*).
(2) qui, quæ, quod (———— an *adjective*).

The second is gone through exactly like the relative; and so is the first, with the exception, of course, of the neut. sing. *quid*.

(*f*) *Quis* is also '*any*' (indefinite); the fem. sing. and neut. pl. are then sometimes *qua*.

(*g*) The compounds of *qui*, *quis*, follow the declension of those pronouns. In the following list the appended syllables in italics are added unaltered to the case of *quis* or *qui*.

Qui-*dam*,	*a certain one.*
Qui-*vis*, Qui-*lĭbet*,	*any you please.*
Quis-*quam*,	*any; any single one* (when it is *denied* that there are any).
Alĭquis,	*any; some* (though not much or many: ali-quis, -qua, -quid *or* -quod. Neut. pl. -qua).
Quis-*piam*,	*some, somebody.*
Quis-*que*,	*each.* (Unusquisque, *each one.*)
Quisquis,	*whoever* (used without a substantive: neut. *quicquid*).
Qui-*cunque*,	*whoever; whatever* (used *with* a subst.).
Ecquis?	(*does*) *any?* (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always *ecqua*. It expects the answer *none*.)
Uter,	*which* (of *two*): uterque, *each* (utraque, utrumque; *G.* -iusque).
Alius (a, ud),	*another; other.* (When alius is used twice in a sentence, the first is construed '*some.*')
Alter,	*the other* (of *two*); *another; one more.*
Talis,	*such;* antecedent to *qualis* (*as*).
Tantus,	*so great;* antecedent to *quantus* (*as*).
Tot,	*so many;* antecedent to *quot* (*as*).

☞ The compounds of *quis* have generally
Neuter *quid* when used *without* } a *substantive.*
Neuter *quod* when used *with* }

☞ The *quid* is generally written *quic* before *q.* Thus, quicquam (quidquam), '*any thing*;' quicquid (quidquid), '*whatever.*'

24. IRREGULAR VERBS.

(1.) **Possum**, Infin. *posse*, I am able; I can.

Pres. Ind.	possum,	potes,	potest,	possŭmus,	potestis, possunt.
Pres. Subj.	possim,	possis,	possit,	possīmus,	possītis, possint.
Imp. Subj.	possem,	posses,	posset,	possemus,	possetis, possent.

Root of Perf. potu. (See page 50, 149.)
Imp. Ind. poteram. *Fut.* potero.

(2.)
Vŏlo,	am willing; wish.
Nōlo,	am unwilling (*for* non volo).
Mālo,	had rather (*for* magis *or* mage volo).

Pres. vŏlo,	vis,	vult,	volŭmus,	vultis,	volunt.
nōlo,	non vis,	non vult,	nolŭmus,	non vultis,	nolunt.
mālo,	mavis,	mavult,	malŭmus,	mavultis,	malunt.

Subj. Pres.	vĕlim,	nōlim,	mālim.	(is, it: īmus, ītis, int.)
Subj. Imperf.	vellem,	nollem,	mallem.	(es, et: emus, etis, ent.)
Infinitive,	velle,	nolle,	malle.	

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or participles (except *volens*, *nolens*), nor imperative, except *noli, nolīto,—nolīte.*

Noli putare (be unwilling to think =) *do not think.*

(3.) **Fero** *, tŭli, lātum, to bear. *Infin.* ferre. *Imper.* fer; ferte.

Pres. Indic. fero, fers, fert; ferĭmus, fertis, ferunt.
Imp. Subj. ferrem, ferres, &c. [*Pass.* ferrer.]

☞ Fertur *for* feritur; ferris *for* fereris.

(4.) **Fio**, become; am made *or* done: *partly used as pass. of* facio.

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has fĭĕrem for *firem*, and an irregular infin. *fieri*. It has no *perf.*; *factus sum, ĕram,* &c. being in use.

Imperf. Subj. fiĕrem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.
Infin. Pres. fiĕri.

---

* This verb has *fers, fert, fertur*, for **feris, ferit,** ferĭtur; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r's*. Hence ferrem, ferre, &c., for **ferĕrem, ferĕre.**

(5.) Eo (īvi, ĭtum, īre), go.

Pres. Indic. eo, is, it; īmus, ītis, eunt.
Pres. Subj. eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.
Participle, iens, euntis, eunti, &c.
Gerunds, eundi, eundo, eundum.
Imp. ibam. *Fut.* ibo. *Imper.* i. *Imperf. Subj.* irem. *Perfect,* ivi: *in the compounds generally* ii.

(6.) Queo, *am able, can.*
Nequeo, *am unable, cannot.*

These verbs are conjugated like *eo,* as far as they are in use: 3 plur. *queunt, nequeunt.* Subj pres. *queam, nequeam,* &c.

25. SUBSTANTIVES.

Deus,	God. *Voc.* Deus. *Nom.* and *Dat. plur.* generally take *i* for *e.* Dii *or* Dî; Diis *or* Dîs.
Jupiter,	Jupiter. *G.* Jovis, &c.
Bos,	bull, cow, ox. *G.* bovis; *G. pl.* boum; *D.* bōbus *or* būbus.
Respublĭca,	republic, commonwealth. G. *reipublicæ,* &c.; the substantive *res,* and the adj. *publĭca* in agreement with it.
Jusjurandum,	oath. *G.* jurisjurandi, &c.; *jus* neut., with the partic. *jurandum* in agreement.
Vis,	strength: ——, vim, vi; vīres, vīrium, vīrĭbus.
Vir,	man: vĭri, &c., as 2nd: vĭri, vĭrōrum, &c.

☞ *Aër, æther,* have generally the acc. *aëra, æthĕra.*

26. GENDERS.

I. DECL. FEMININE, except names of men and designations of men.

II. DECL. MASCULINE, except *um* neuter.

But *alvus, humus, vannus, colus,*
Though belonging to the second,
Are feminine: and *virus* (juice),
And *pelagus* are neuter reckoned:
Vulgus mostly goes with these,
But *may* be masculine, if you please.

III. DECL. (A.) Masculine terminations:

er, or, os,
es *increasing,*
o, when not *do, go, io.*

er) Neuters many end in *er,*
As *verber, iter, uber, ver;*
With plants in *er,* as *acer* and *papaver,*
With many others: add to these *cadaver.*

or) Of neuters there are four in *or*;
Marmor, æquor, ador, cor:
A feminine is *arbor* (tree),
A second you will hardly see.

os) Neuters are *chaos, melos, os:*
But feminine are *cos* and *dos.*

es) Of *es* increasing, neuter *æs*
Is found: and feminine are these;
Quies, merces, merges, seges,
With *compes, inquies,* and *teges.*

o) *Caro* is *flesh:* remember this
As *feminini generis.*

(B.) Feminine terminations:

do, go, io,
as, is, aus, x,
es *not increasing,*
s *impure.*

do, go, io) *Cardo, ordo,* and *papilio,*
With *ligo, margo, vespertilio,*
Are masculine: add to these *quaternio*
Pugio, stellio, scipio, ternio *.

as) Three are the *masculines* in *as,*
As, adămas, and *elĕphas:*
Three are the *neuters* too in *as,*
Vas (vasis), with *nefas* and *fas.*

is) Many words that end in *is*
Are *masculini* generis:
Torris, vectis, vermis, mensis,
Unguis, ignis, orbis, ensis,
Amnis, axis et *annalis,*
Sentis, cassis, canalis,
Callis, caulis, collis, crinis,
Panis, postis, piscis, finis,
Fustis, funis, fascis, follis:
genitivo crescunt *pollis,*
Lapis, pulvis, cucŭmis,
Cinis, sanguis, glis, vomis.

x) *Calix,* and *codex* (codĭcis),
Are *masculini* generis;
So *vertex, cortex,* and the same the case is
With *pollex, grex,* and with *thorax* (thorācis).

s impure) *Dodrans, quadrans, mons,* and *pons,*
Are *masculine,* with *rudens, dens,* and *fons:*

---

* With a few more: such as *unio* (pearl), *optio* (a military substitute), &c.: those which are *abstract* nouns are all feminine.

Add *adeps* (fat), with *confluens, Oriens, hydrops, occidens.*

(C.) Neuter terminations:

{c, a, t, e, l, n, ar, ur, us.

l) *Sol,* the sun that brightly shines,
Mugil and *sal* are masculines.

n) The masculines that end in *n*
Are *pecten, lien, ren,* and *splen.*

ur) These are the masculines in *ur,*
Vultur, turtur, furfur, fur.

us) Two names of beasts that end in *us*
Are masculine, *lepus* (hare) and *mus.*

These too are feminines in *us,*
Juventus, virtus, servĭtus *,
Tellus, senectus, incus, salus,
With *pecus* (pecŭdis), and *palus.*

IV. Decl. *Us* masculine: *u* neuter.

us) But these are feminines in *us,*
Tribus, acus, porticus,
Domus, nurus, socrus, anus,
Idus (iduum), and *manus.*

V. Decl. Feminine. But,

Meridies is masculine; and so
Is *dies* in plurali numero †.

Obs. ☞ Some nouns have a particular gender, from their *meaning.*

The names of *males,* of *rivers, months,* and *winds,*
Remember well; for masculine are these.
The names of *females, countries, islands, towns,*
Are feminine; so are the names of *trees.*

But to these rules there are many exceptions: for instance, the names of *trees, plants,* &c. in *er* of the third are *neuter* (see *rule* under A): and the *plural* names of towns in *i* are masc.; those in *um,* and in *er, ur,* of the *third,* are *neut.*

---

* With the exception of these four words, nouns in *tus, sus,* without *personal* meaning, are mostly nouns of the *fourth decl.* from the *supine* root.

† In the singular it is commonly *masc.;* seldom feminine, except when a *fixed day* is spoken of, or when it is equivalent to a *length of time.*

27. DECLENSIONS OF THE ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

		Nom.	Genitive.	Accus.
Pers. 1.	Sing.	*I*	*my* or *mine*	*me*
	Plur.	*we*	*our* or *ours*	*us*
Pers. 2.	Sing.	*thou*	*thy* or *thine*	*thee*
	Plur.	*ye* / *you*	*your* or *yours*	*you*
Pers.	Sing. mas.	*he*	*his*	*him*
	Sing. fem.	*she*	*her* or *hers*	*her*
	Sing. neut.	*it*	*its*	*it*
	Plur.	*they*	*their* or *theirs*	*them*
Relative and Interrogative.		*who*	*whose*	*whom*
		which	*of which* or *whose*	*which.*

Demonstrative *this*, plural *these*. *that*, plural *those*.

---

28. TABLE OF THE ENGLISH VERB.

Indicative Mood.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	*I defend* / *I am defending* / *I do defend*	*I am defended.*
Imperfect.	*I was defending*	(none).
Perfect-Definite.	*I have defended*	*I have been defended.*
Perfect.	*I defended* / *I did defend*	*I was defended.*
Pluperfect.	*I had defended*	*I had been defended.*
Future.	*I shall* or *will defend*	*I shall* or *will be defended.*
Future-Perfect.	*I shall* or *will have defended*	*I shall* or *will have been defended.*

Imperative Mood.

S.	*P.*	*S.*	*P.*
Defend (*thou*).	*Defend* (*ye*).	*Be thou defended.*	*Be ye defended.*

Forms that often answer to the Tenses of the Latin Subjunctive.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	*I may* or *can defend* . . .	*I may* or *can be defended.*
Imperfect.	*I might, could, should,* or *would defend.*	*I might, could, should,* or *would be defended.*
Perfect.	*I may* or *can have defended.*	*I may* or *can have been defended.*
Pluperfect.	*I might, could, should,* or *would have defended.*	*I might, could, should,* or *would have been defended.*

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	*To defend*	*To be defended.*
Perfect.	*To have defended*	*To have been defended.*
Future.	*To be going* or *about to defend.*	*To be going* or *about to be defended.*

Participles.

Present.	*Defending*	*Defended* (past part.). *Being defended.*
Perfect.	*Having defended*	*Having been defended.*
Future.	*Going* or *about to defend* .	*Going* or *about to be defended.*

---

29. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus,	*good,*	melior,	optimus.
malus,	*bad,*	pejor,	pessimus.
parvus,	*little,*	minor,	minimus.
magnus,	*great,*	major,	maximus.
multus,	*much,*	plus (*neut.*),	plurimus.

Nom. Acc. Plus. *Gen.* pluris (no other case in sing.). ***Plural,*** *N. A.* plures, plura. *Gen.* plurium. *D.* pluribus.

---

30. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

Absque, a, ab, abs, *and* de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, *and* e,
Tenus, sine, pro, *and* præ.

QUESTIONS.

This Table is referred to in the Exercises by a numeral above the line followed by a curve, as $^{6)}$.

[Those on the *Syntax* have an asterisk before them.]

N.B. The pupil should learn the Terminations of Substantives (p. 109) and of the third persons of the Verb (p. 114) as soon as possible.

1. Give the accusative endings. (9.)
2. Repeat the terminations of the third persons. (82.)
3. Give the genitive endings. (40.)

*4. In what case is the *price* or *value* put sometimes? [*The Gen.* 47.]

5. What are the endings of nouns expressing *virtues, vices, dispositions,* &c.? (47, h.)

*6. By what case are some *neuter* adjectives followed? *What* adjectives are so used? (*Ans.* Indefinite numerals.)
What substantive is so used? (*Ans.* The indeclinable substantive '*nihil*,' 'nothing.' 56.)

*7. What often stands as the nominative case to the verb? (60, n.)
When an *infinitive mood* (or *sentence*) is the nominative case to the verb, where is it placed in *English*? (*Ans. After* the verb, being *represented* by the pronoun '*it*,' which is not to be translated. 60, n.)
In what *gender* is the adjective then put? (*Ans.* In the *neuter*.)

8. How is the *acc. plur.* got from the *acc. sing.*? What must '*um*' be turned into, to give the *acc. plur.* of the second? What is always the termination of the *acc. neut.* plural? (64.)

9. By what *prepositions* is the *dat.* construed? [67. N.B. These prepositions are called *signs* of the *dative*.]
a) What are the signs of the *ablative*? (67.)
b) By what preposition is an *ablative* of time construed? (*Ans.* By *in* or *at*.)
c) How is an *acc.* of time construed? (*Ans.* By '*for*,' or without any *prepos.* 72.)

10. To what declension do adjectives in '*is*' belong? [*The third.*]

Of what gender are they? [*m. and f.*] What is their *neuter* form? [*e.*] Is their ablative *e* or *i*? [*i.*] [a]

*11. In what case do you put the name of a town *where* a thing was done? When is the town *where* put in the *abl.*? When in the *gen.*? (72, s.)

*12. In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *when*? [In the *abl.*]

* In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *how long*? [In the *acc.*]

Is '*for*' a sign of the *dative*, when it stands before a noun of time? [*Ans.* No, of the *acc.*]

13. How may the *third plural* be got from the *third* singular? Into what must '*it*' of the perfect be changed? '*it*' of the fourth? '*it*' in '*erit*?' all other *it*'s? (79.)

14. Give the terminations of the *nom.* and *gen.* plural. (81.)

*15. What case does *in* govern when it means '*into*?' [*Acc.*]
——————————— '*in*?' [*Abl.*]
——————— *ex* govern? [*Abl.*]

*16. How must '*not*' with the imperative be translated [b]? [By *nē*.] What word must stand before the *not* in English? [The '*do*' of the imperative.]

*17. How is the thing *with which* any thing is done translated? or, what case *answers* to '*with what*?' [*Abl.*]

18. When '*thing*' or '*things*' is left out, in what *gender* must the adjective be put? [*Neut.*]

*19. What cases follow verbs of *accusing, acquitting, condemning*? [Acc. of *person*: Gen. of the *charge*.]

*20. By what cases may '*of great valour*' be translated into Latin? [*Gen.* or *Abl.*]

*21. In what case does a noun of *price* stand, when it answers to '*for how much*?' [*In the abl.*]

*22. (*a*) When must the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, them*, &c.) be translated by *sui*, &c.? [*When the pron. represents the same person as the nom. to the verb.*] (*b*) What preposition is omitted after *give, cost*, the adj. *like*, &c.? [*To.*]

*23. When is one noun said to be *in apposition* to another? In what case is a substantive *in apposition* to another placed? [*In the same case as the subst. to which it stands in apposition.*]

*24. What case do *dignus, indignus* [c], &c., govern? [*Abl.*]

*25. What case does the verb *to be* take after it? [*The same case as before it.*]

*26. What case do the compounds of *esse* govern? [*The dat.*] What exception is there? [*Possum.*]

---

[a] The manner of declining the other adjectives of the *third* is explained at p. 112.

[b] How may the *imperative* be got from the *infinitive*? [*By throwing away* re.]

[c] The ablative after *dignus, indignus*, must be Englished by '*of*:' after all of them consider what preposition we should naturally use in English, and *use* that, without thinking about the usual *signs* of the ablative.

*27. What does the *English infinitive* often express, but the Latin infinitive *never*? [A *purpose*.]

*28. How may the English infinitive expressing a *purpose* be translated? [By *ut* with the *subjunctive*: of which the *imperfect* follows the past tenses; the *present*, the other tenses.]

29. What tense is, '*he is come*?' [*Perf.*] What tense is, '*he was come*?' [*Plup.*] With what auxiliary do neuter verbs of motion form their *perfect definite*?

30. How is the *subjunctive present*, standing in a principal sentence, to be translated? [As an *imperative*, or to express *a wish*. Veniat = *let him come*; or *may he come*.]

(*a*) How must the *perfect* be construed, when it is followed by the subjunctive *present*? [*By the perf. definite.*]

*31. When is the English *indicative* after '*that*' to be translated by the *Latin subjunctive* governed by *ut*? [When *that* follows *so* or *such*.—It then introduces a *consequence*.]

*32. What tenses of the subjunctive are the *regular attendants* of the *past tenses* of the *indicative*? [The *imperf.* and *pluperf.*]

*33. When is '*to*' never a *sign* of the dative? [After verbs of *motion: come, send, fetch*, &c.] *How is the place *to which* translated? (By *Acc.*) *How is the place *from which* translated? (By the *Abl.*) When must *ad*, 'to,' be expressed? (*Ans.* When the place is not the name of a *town* or *small island*; and when the motion is to a *person*.)

*34. How is the supine in *um* used? (*Ans.* after verbs of *motion*.) How is the sup. in *um* Englished? (*Ans.* by the *infin. acc.*) How is the *sup.* in *u* used? (*Ans.* After some adjectives, such as *hard, disgraceful, pleasant, best*, &c.) How is the *sup.* in *u* Englished? (*Ans.* Regularly by the *infin.* passive: but often by the *infin. active*.)

*35. How is the want of the *perfect* participle ‡ *active* supplied? (*Ans.* By *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf.* of the subjunctive; or by the *abl. absolute*.)

*36. What is the *ablative absolute*? *Is the substantive of the *abl. absol.* to be construed by a *preposition*? [No.] *By what participle *governing* its noun may the ablative absolute often be construed, when the participle is of the *perf. pass.*? [By the *partic.* with '*having*.']

*37. What substantives follow the rules for the proper names of towns? [*Ans. Domus* and *rus*: also the genitives *humi* and *militiæ*. See 33.]

38. Where is '*cum*' placed with the ablatives of personal pronouns? [*After them and joined to them*: mecum, &c.]

*39. What case do adjectives signifying *desire*, &c. govern? [*Gen.*]

*41. In what case is *the agent* or *person by whom* put? (*Ans.* In the ablative with *a* or *ab*: but after the part. in *dus*, in the dative.)

42. Mention some words, &c., after which the *gerund* or *part.* in

---

‡ What English participle answers to the *partic.* in *ns*? [*Part.* in *ng*.] in *us*? [Part. in *d*, *t*, or *n*.] *rus*? [*Going to—*; or, *about to—*.] in *ndus*? [*Form of inf. pass.*]

dus follows in the ***dat.*** [Utĭlis, ***profitable*** or ***good for;*** inutĭlis, ***unprofitable;*** idoneus, ***fit for;*** tempus impendĕre, ***to spend time in*** or ***on;*** vacāre, ***to have leisure;*** studēre, ***aim at; devote oneself to.***]

*43. How is what is in ***form*** the ***pass. infin.*** to be translated after '***is,***' '***are***'? [***Ans.*** By the part. in ***dus.***]

*44. What verbs govern the dative? (191.) *How is the ***pluperf. indic.*** to be translated after '***if***'? [***By plup. subj.***]

45. In the infinitives made up of ***two words,*** is the participle to agree with its substantive or not? (***Ans.*** To agree.) Is the word in ***um*** in the ***fut. infin. pass.*** a participle? What is it? [***Supine.***]
Can it then agree with the substantive? [***No.***]

*46. Must you look for the ***antecedent*** to the relative in the relative sentence or not? [***Generally not.***] *Is the ***case*** of the relative determined by a word in its own, or in the preceding sentence? (236.)

47. Can the verbs that govern the ***dative*** be used in the ***first*** or ***second*** persons in the passive? In what person only can they be used in the passive? [***In the third sing.***]

48. How is the present infin. construed after *licuit? oportuit?* [***Generally by the perf.***]

*49. What verbs govern the gen.? (244.)

*50. ———————— abl.? (221, 245.)

*51. What cases do ***pœnitet, pudet,*** &c., take after them? (***Ans.*** An ***accusative*** of the ***person, feeling;*** a ***gen.*** of the ***thing*** or person about which the emotion is felt.)

*52. How is '***must***' translated? [***By the part.*** in ***dus*** with ***the verb*** esse.] When is the part. in ***dus*** to ***agree*** with the subst.†? [***When the verb governs the accusative.***] When the verb ***does not*** govern the acc., in what case, &c. must the participle stand? [In the ***nom. neut.,*** and then ***esse*** will always stand in the ***third singular.***]

Go through ***prodesse*** (129, p. 44).
———————— occīdĕre, ***killing*** (175, p. 58).
———————— epistŏla scribenda (181, p. 59).
———————— scribendum est mihi (207, p. 67).
———————— mihi creditur (237, p. 77).
———————— mihi ire licet (261, p. 83).
———————— me ire oportet (269, p. 85).
Mention the participles of ***loquor*** (242, p. 78)‡.

---

† The subst., that is, which is governed by the verb that follows ***must.*** The ***nom.*** before ***must*** becomes the ***dat.*** after ***esse,*** but is often omitted.

‡ The ***fut. inf.*** of a deponent verb is the ***fut. in rus*** with ***esse.***

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

N.B. These differences are referred to in the Exercises by a numeral *above* the line.

	ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1.	To think *nothing of*.	To reckon *at nothing* (*nihĭli* ducĕre *or* facĕre).
2.	To value *highly* [a].	To value *at a high price* (*magni* æstĭmāre).
3.	To think *little of* [b]. / To hold *cheap*.	To value *at a little price* (*parvi* æstĭmāre).
4.	*No* stability.	*Nothing* of stability (*nihil* stabilitātis).
	Some time.	*Something* of time (*alĭquid* tempŏris).
	Much good.	*Much* of good (*multum* boni).
	How much pleasure.	*How much* of pleasure (*quantum* voluptātis).
	☞ Hence '*no*,' '*some*,' (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*,) '*much*,' '*how much*,' are to be translated by '*nihil*,' '*alĭquid*,' '*multum*,' '*quantum*,' followed by the *genitive*.	
5.	He did it *unwillingly*.	He *unwilling* did it.
6.	*It* is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful.
7.	It is the *part* / ——— *duty* / ——— *business* / ——— *mark* / ——— *character* } of a wise man.	It is *of* a wise man.
8.	To condemn a man *to death*.	To condemn a man *of the head*.

[a] To value *very* highly (*maxĭmi* æstĭmāre).

[b] The thing valued will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the '*of*,' for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
9. As many as *possible*. As many as *he* can or *could*.	*As the most* (*quam plurĭmi*).
The greatest *possible*. The greatest *he can* or *could*.	*As the greatest* (*quam maxĭmus*).
	[That is, '*as many* as the *most*;' '*as great* as the greatest,' &c.]
10. On the *top of* the mountain.	On the mountain *highest* (in *summo* monte).
In the *middle of* the water.	In the water *middle* (in *mediâ* aquâ).
11. Is going to bed.	Is going *to lie down* (*cubĭtum*); supine.
12. It is hard *to say*.	It is hard *in saying* (difficĭle est *dictu*); supine.
13. *Whilst* they were (are, &c.) playing.	During playing (*inter ludendum*).
14. The intention *of writing a letter*.	The intention of *a letter to-be-written* (*scribendæ epistŏlæ*).
15. *We must cultivate virtue.*	*Virtue is to-be-cultivated* (*colenda est virtus*).
16. *Caius must write.*	*It is to-be-written by Caius* (*Caio scribendum est*).
17. *We must believe Caius.*	*It is to-be-believed to Caius* * (*credendum est Caio*).
18. The ways of expressing the *purpose* are,	
He comes *to see* the games. (He comes *in order to* see), &c.	(*a*) Venit *ut* ludos *spectet*. (*b*) Venit ludos *spectātum* (*supine*). (*c*) Venit ludos *spectatūrus*. (*d*) Venit *ad ludos spectandos*. To which add, (*e*) Venit *causâ* (*for the purpose*) ludōrum spectandōrum; and (*f*) Instead of *ut*, the relative may be used: He sent ambassadors, *qui* pacem *petĕrent* (*to sue* for peace).
19. (*a*) I may go.	Mihi ire licet (*it is permitted to me* to go).
(*b*) I might *have gone*.	Mihi *ire* licuit (*it was permitted to me* to go).
20. (*a*) I ought to go.	Me ire oportet.
(*b*) I ought to have gone.	Me ire oportuit.

* It is to be believed, or trusted (by us); that is, we are to trust Caius.

INDEX I.

ENGLISH.

N.B. Throughout these vocabularies, the figures refer to the sections, and not to the pages, in the body of the book, unless the letter *p* is prefixed, when the reference is to the page.

[For the prepositions that always govern the abl. see p. 128, 30, for prepositions governing acc., 255, 265.]

ABOUT, circa, circum (prep.).
about the same time, sub idem tempus.
above, super, supra (prep.).
accident, casus, G. ūs. By accident, casu.
according to, secundum (prep.).
account of (on), ob, propter (prep.).
across, trans (prep.).
accuse, to, accusare.
acquit, to, absolvĕre (solv, solūt).
after, post (prep.).
against, adversus: contra (prep.).
aim at, to, studēre (dat. 191).
air, aer, aeris, *m.*
all, omnis; cunctus.
allowed fact; it is an —, constat.
allowed (it is), constat.
along, secundum (prep. acc.).
Alps, Alp-es, G. ium.
altar, ara.
always, semper.
amongst, inter (prep.).
amongst the Gauls, apud Gallos.
and, et;—ac *before consonants* (except k sounds): atque *before vowels or consonants:* quĕ.
anger, ira.
animal, anim-al, G. ālis.
answer, to, respondēre (respondi, responsum), dat. 191.
any, ull-us, a, um. G. īus.
Apollo, Apoll-o. G. ĭnis.
arm, brachium.
arms, arma, neut. plur
art, ars. G. artis.
arrow, săgitta.
as many as possible, quam plurimi.
as possible, quam *before the* superl.
ass, asĭn-us. G. i.
assistance, auxilium.
assumed appearance, simulatio.
at, apud *with acc.*, or used as a sign of Genitive or Ablative (72, 73).
at nothing, nihĭlli.
at a great price, magni.
at a little price, parvi.
at a very great price, maxĭmi.
Athenian, Atheniensis.
Athens, Athēnæ, plur.
attentive, studiōsus (*gen.*).
avarice, avaritia.
avaricious, avārus (*gen.*).
avenge, to, vindicare.
avoid, to, vitare.
autumn, auctumnus.
awaken, to, excĭtare.

bad, malus.
bad (for any *purpose*), inutĭlis, *dat.*
bake, to, coquĕre (coxi, coctum).
bark, cort-ex, ĭcis, m.
be in trouble, to, labōrare.
bear, urs-us, i.
beast, bestia.
beast (of *huge* beasts), bellua.
because, quia.
becomes, fit.
before, prep. ante *, } 222.
before, adv. antea, } 222.
before, conj. antĕquam, } 222.
beguile, to, fallĕre (fefelli).
behind, pone (prep.).

* Sometimes adverb.

behold, to, adspicĕre; conspicĕre.
believe, to, credĕre (dat.), 191.
benefit, beneficium.
besides, præter (prep.).
best, optĭmus.
better, melior.
better (it is), præstat.
beyond, præter, ultra (prep.).
bigger, major.
bind, to, vincire (vinxi, vinctum).
bird, avis. G. avis.
bitter, amārus.
blame, culpa.
blind, cæcus.
blood, sangu-is, ĭnis, m.
body, corp-us, ŏris.
book, liber. G. libri.
born, natus (followed by prep. *ad*).
both—and, et—et.
boy, puer. G. puĕri.
break, to, frangĕre (frēgi, fractum).
break, to, one's word, fidem violare.
break, to, a law, legem violare.
brother, frat-er, ris.
bribery, ambĭt-us, ûs.
bridge, pon-s. G. tis, m.
build, to, ædificare.
build, to (of a nest), construĕre (construxi, constructum).
burst, to, rumpĕre (rūpi, ruptum).
bury, to, sepĕlire (sepultum).
but, sed, at, autem, 302.
buy, to, emĕre (ēmi, emptum).
by (= close by), juxta (prep.).
by chance, casu.

call, to, vŏcare.
camp, castr-a, orum, pl.
can, possum. See 149 *.
card, to, carpĕre.
carry on (war), to, gerĕre (gessi, gestum).
Carthage, Carthāg-o, ĭnis.
case of (in the), in (prep. abl.).
cause to be made, to, faciendum curare.
cave, antrum.
certain, certus.
chain, vincŭlum.
chance, by, casu.
change, to, mutare.
character, mor-es, um, pl.
chariot, curr-us, ûs.
chastise, to, castīgare.
cherish, to, fovēre.
Christian, Christiānus.
citizen, civis. G. civis.
city, urb-s. G. is.
cloak, pallium.
close to, juxta (prep. acc.).
clouds, nūbes, nub-is, f.
cold, frig-us, ŏris.
colour, col-or, ōris.
come, to, vĕnire (vēni, ventum).
command, to, impĕrare, *dat.*
common (= of common occurrence), usitatus.
condemn, to, damnare.
conquer, to, vincĕre (vīci, victum).
conquered, victus.
contented, contentus, *abl.*
contrary, contrarius.
cook, to, coquĕre (coxi, coctum).
cost, to, stare (stĕti) [abl. of *price*]; used with dative of person, as, it cost me, mihi stetit.
country, patria.
country, into the, rus.
country, in the, ruri.
country, from the, rure.
courageously, fortĭter.
cover, to, tegĕre (texi, tectum).
cover (= overlay, coat with), obducĕre (duxi, ductum).
crime, flagitium.
crop, seg-es, ĕtis, f.
crown, corōna.
crown, to, cingĕre (*surround*).
cry out, to, clamare.
custom, consuetūd-o, ĭnis.
customary, usitatus.

daily, quotidie.
dance, to, saltare.
danger, perīcŭlum.
dangerous, periculōsus.
day, di-es, ei, m.
dead, mortuus.
death, mor-s, tis. damnare.
death, to (to condemn), capitis

* Or page 123, 24, 1.

deceive, to, fallĕre (fefelli); decipĕre, decipio (decēpi, deceptum).
defraud, to, fraudare (abl.).
deprive, to, privare (abl.).
desire, cupidĭt-as, ātis.
desirous, cupĭdus (gen.).
devote oneself to, to, studēre (dat.), 191.
die, mori, mortuus sum.
difficult, difficĭlis.
displease, to, displĭcēre (dat.), 191.
discharge, to, fungi (functus), abl.
discover, to, detĕgere.
disgraceful, turpis. [tum).
disregard, to, neglĭgere (lexi, lec-
divide, to, divĭdĕre (divīsi).
do, to, fac-ĕre, io (fēci, factum).
do, agĕre (egi, actum).
do good to, prodesse (profui, dat.).
dog, can-is. G. is.
dragon, drac-o, ōnis.
dust, pulv-is, eris, m.
dutiful affection, piĕt-as, ātis.
duty, officium.
dwell, to, habĭtare.

each other (after '*contrary to*'), [inter se.
earth, terra,
easily, facĭle.
easy, facilis.
eat, to, edĕre (ēdi, ēsum).
economy, parsimonia.
effectual, effĭcax.
elegance, elegantia.
elephant, elephas, elephantis.
endued with, prædĭtus (abl.).
enemy, host-is. G. is.
engaged in, to be (battles, &c.), inter-esse.
enjoy, to, frui (abl.).
envy, to, invĭdĕre (dat. 191).
estate, fund-us, i.
eternal, sempiternus.
even, etiam.
even—not, nē quidem, 188.
evening, vesper (abl. vesper-e *or* i).
every, omnis.
every day, quotidie.
evil, malum.
evil (after '*some*,' '*how much*,' '*no*'), the gen. mali.
example, exemplum.
excellent, præstans.
expense, sumptus, ûs.
expire, to, exspirare.

face, faci-es, ēi.
fact: it is an allowed —, constat.
faith, fid-es, ĕi.
faithful, fidēlis.
fall down, to, decĭdĕre.
father, pa-ter, tris.
fault, culpa.
favour, to, favēre (fāvi, fautum,
fear, to, timēre; metuĕre. [dat.).
fear, met-us, ûs.
feel, to, sentire (sensum).
fetch water, to, aquātum, *supine*.
fidelity, fid-es, ei.
field, in the, militiæ.
fight, to, pugnare.
figure, figūra.
fill, to, complēre (plēvi, plētum).
find, to, repĕrire.
finish, to, fīnire.
firm, firmus.
first, primus.
fish, pisc-is, is, m.
fit for, idoneus, dat.
flay, deglūbĕre.
flock, gre-x, grĕg-is, m.
flourish, to, florēre.
fly out, to, evŏlare.
folly, stultitia.
fond, cupĭdus (gen.).
food, cib-us, i.
for, *before a noun of* time, *must not be translated. The noun must be in the* acc.
forage, to, pabulātum, *supine*.
forces, copiæ, plur.
forget, oblivisci, oblītus (gen. or
fortune, fortūna. [acc.).
found (a city), to, condĕre (condĭdi, condĭtum).
fourth, quartus.
fox, vulp-es. G. is, f.
free, liber, liberă, &c. (abl.)
friend, amīcus.
friendship, amicitia.
frighten, to, terrēre.
from (= out of), ex (prep.); a,
frugality, parsimonia. [ab (prep.).

fruit, fruct-us, ûs.
future, futurus.

game, lus-us, ûs.
garden, hortus.
garland, corōna.
gate, porta.
Gaul, Gallus.
gentle, mitis.
German, Germānus.
get possession of, to, potīri (potior), abl. or gen.
gift, donum.
girl, puella.
give, to, dăre (dĕdi, dătum): dat. of *person*; acc. of *thing given*.
glory, gloria.
go, to, away, ab-ire, 161, k.
go to bed, } cubĭtum ire, 161.
go to roost, }
go a hunting, to, venātum ire, 161.
go, to, ire (eo). See p. 124, s.
gold, aurum.
good, bonus.
good (after '*some*,' '*how much*,' '*no*,' &c.), boni, gen.
good *for*, &c., utĭlis, *dat.*
govern, to, regĕre.
government, imperium.
grain, a, granum.
great, magnus.
greater, major.
greatest, maximus: *generally translated by* summus, highest, *when the things spoken of have not really* size; *for instance*, qualities of the mind.
greatest possible, the, quam maxĭmus.
greatness, magnitūd-o, ĭnis.
ground, on the, humi, gen.

hang, to, over (one), immĭnēre.
hand, man-us, ûs.
hand, to be at, adesse (adsum).
harm: to do harm to, obesse, dat.
happily, beāte. [(obsum).
happy, felix; beātus.
have, to, habēre.
head, cap-ut, ĭtis, n.
heal, to, medēri, dat.
hear, to, audire.
heart, cor, cordis, n.
heat, cal-or, ōris.
heavy, gravis.
hen, gallīna.
her, { sua, &c., fem. of suus. / ejus (*gen.* when it does not relate to nom. of sentence).
herself (*when used as a nom. with a* noun), ipsa.
himself, ipse, a, um; G. ius, &c.
his, suus (when relating to the nom. of the sentence; if it does *not* relate to the nom. or principal word of the sentence, it must be translated by the gen. *ejus*).
hitherto, adhuc.
hold, to, tenēre (tenui).
hold cheap, to, parvi æstimare.
hold, to, one's tongue, tacēre.
home, *at*, domi: *from*, domo: *to*, [domum.
honey, mel, mellis, n.
honour (meaning fidelity, &c.), [fid-es, ei.
hope for, to, spērare.
hornet, crabr-o, ōnis.
horse, equ-us, i.
house, domus, f.
how (*before an* adj.), quam.
how much, quantum.
huge, ingen-s, tis.
human, humānus.
humour, indulgēre (indulsi, indultum), dat. 191.
hunting, a, venatum, *supine*.
hurt, nocēre (*dat.*): lædĕre, *acc.*
husbandman, agricŏla, m. [(læsi).

ignorance, ignorati-o, ōnis.
ignorant, ignārus (gen.).
illuminate, illustrare.
immense, ingen-s, tis.
impel, impellĕre (pŭli, pulsum).
in, in (abl.).
into, in (acc.).
inclined, propensus.
increase, to (trans.), aug-ēre (auxi, auctum).
indulge, to, indulgēre (indulsi, indultum), dat. 191.
industry, industria.
injure, to, nocēre, *dat.* 191.
injury, injuria.

intention, consilium.
invent, to, invĕnire (vēni, ventum).
irritate, to, irrītare.
is it, est.
island, insŭla.
its, suus (when relating to *nom.* of sentence: when not, ejus).
itself, ipse, a, *um*. G. ius.

journey, it-er, ĭnĕris, n.
judge, jud-ex, ĭcis.
judge, to, judĭcare.
Jupiter, Jupĭter. G. Jovis.

keep, to, servare.
king, rex, rēg-is.
knowledge, scientia.
known, it is, constat.

labour, to, labōrare.
labour, lab-or, ōris.
large, grandis.
laugh, to, } ridēre (rīsi).
laugh at, }
law, lex, legis.
lead, dūcĕre (duxi, ductum).
leaf, folium.
learn, to, discĕre (didici).
learn, to, by heart, ediscĕre.
least, minĭmus.
legion, legi-o, ōnis.
less, min-or. Neut. us.
let *must be untranslated, being a sign of the imperative.*
letter, epistŏla.
lie, mendacium.
life, vita.
light, lu-x, cis.
light (adj.), levis.
like, similis, dat.
like, very, simillĭmus.
lion, le-o, ōnis.
literature, liter-æ, arum (plur.).
little, parvus.
little, with, parvo.
live, to, vivĕre (vixi, victum).
long, longus.
lose, to, a-mittĕre (mīsi, missum).
love, to, amare.
lust, libīd-o, ĭnis.

magistrate, magistrāt-us, ûs.
make, to, facĕre, fēci, factum (facio).
man, vir, homo, 98, *note*.
many, multus.
marry, to, nubĕre (nupsi, nuptum), dat. 191.
Marseilles, Massilia.
master (who *teaches*), magister.
master (who *owns*), domĭnus.
master, to, domare (domui, domĭtum).
may, licet. } See 259—263.
might, licuit. }
means (by means of), per (prep.).
melt, liquescĕre, licui.
middle of, medius (in agreement with its noun, 145).
mind, anĭmus.
mine, meus. Voc. mas., mi.
miserable, miser.
misery, miseria.
money, pecunia.
moon, luna.
mother, māt-er, ris.
mountain, mon-s, tis, m.
mouth (of a river), ostium.
move, to, movēre; *intrans.* movēri (mōvi, mōtum).
much, multus.
much (*when* nom. *or* acc.), multum *with* gen. 56.
must, *to be translated by* part. in dus, 207, *note* f.
my, meus, a, um.
myself (I), ipse.

nature, natūra.
natural to man, humānus.
nearer, propior.
need, to, egēre (gen. *or* abl.).
neglect, to, neglĭgĕre (neglexi, neglectum).
neither, neque *or* nec.
nest, nidus.
never, nunquam.
new, novus.
night, nox, noctis, f.
nightingale, luscinia.
no, nullus. [gen.).
no (nihil, *nothing of*, followed by
nobody, } nem-o, ĭnis.
no one, }

nor, neque *or* nec.
not (*in questions*), nonne?
not, non.
not only—but also, non solum—verum etiam.
not yet, nondum.
now, nunc.

oak, querc-us, ûs.
obey, to, parēre, dat. 191.
observe, to, servare: conservare.
ocean, ocean-us, i.
offend against, to, violare.
often, sæpe.
old man, sen-ex, is. *G. pl.* um.
old age, senect-us, ūtis, f.
on account of, ob.
one, un-us, a, um. G. ius.
one's, suus (*in agreement*).
only, *see* not only.
open, to, aperire (aperui, apertum).
opportunity, occas-io, ōnis.
orator, orāt-or, ōris.
order, jubēre (jussi, jussum).
other, the, reliquus.
out of, extra (prep.).
over, super (prep.).

pain, dol-or, dolōr-is.
pardon, to, ignoscĕre (ignōvi), dat. 191.
parent, paren-s, tis.
part, par-s, tis, f.
pavement, pavimentum.
peace, pa-x, cis.
people, populus.
perceive, to, sentire (sensi).
persuade, to, persuadēre, persuasi, dat. 191.
physician, medĭcus.
pity, to, miserēri (gen.).
place, to, ponĕre (posui, positum).
plant, to, serĕre (sēvi, sătum).
Plato, Plat-o, ōnis.
play, to, ludĕre (lūsi, lūsum).
playing, whilst they are, inter ludendum.
pleasant, jucundus.
please, to, placēre (dat.), 191.
pleasure, volupta-s, tis.
plough, to, ărare.
plunge (into), to, immergĕre (mersi, mersum).
poet, poēta.
point out, to, monstrare.
poor, paup-er, ĕris.
potion, poti-o, ōnis.
power: in the power of, penes [(prep.).
praise, to, laudare.
praise, lau-s, dis.
precept, præceptum.
prejudicial, to be, ob-esse (dat.).
preserve, servare.
priest, sacerdo-s, ōtis.
prison, carc-er, ĕris.
profitable, utilis.
procure, to, } parare.
provide, to, }
prudence, prudentia.
pull down, to, evertĕre (verti, versum).

queen, rēgīna.

race, gen-us, ĕris, n.
raise up, to, excĭtare.
raise forces, to, compărare copias.
rather, I had, malo.
read, to, legĕre (lēgi, lectum).
receive, to, ac-cĭpĕre (cēpi, ceptum).
reckon, to, ducĕre (duxi, ductum).
recollect, to, reminisci (gen. *or* [acc.).
reign, to, regnare.
reign, regnum.
relying on, fretus (abl.).
remain, to, manēre (mansi).
remember, to, recordari (gen. *or* acc.).
remove, to (intrans.), migrare.
repent, to, pœnitēre; used impersonally, pœnitet.
require, to, egēre (gen. *or* abl.).
resist, to, resistĕre (stiti), dat.
rest, to, quiescĕre (quiēvi, quiētum).
retain, to, retinēre.
return, to, redire (redeo).
Rhine, Rhenus.
Rhone, Rhodănus.
rightly, recte.
ripen, to, coquĕre (coxi, coctum).
river, flum-en, ĭnis, n.: amn-is, is, *m.*
road, via.
rob, to, spoliare (abl.).
Roman, Romanus.
Rome, Roma.
roost, to go to, cubĭtum ire.

round, circum, circa.
rouse up, to, excĭtare.
rule, to, regĕre (rexi, rectum).
run, to, currĕre (cucurri, cursum).

sacrifice, to, immŏlare.
safe, tutus.
salt water, aqua marīna.
Sardis, Sard-es, ium, pl.
Saturn, Saturnus.
save, to, servare.
say, to, dicĕre (dixi, dictum).
scatter, to, spargĕre (sparsi).
sceptre, sceptrum.
science, scientia.
sea-water, aqua marīna.
see, to, vīdēre (vīdi, vīsum).
seed, sem-en, ĭnis, n.
seem, to, vidēri (vīsus sum).
seize, arripĕre, io (arripui, arreptum).
sell, to, vĕndĕre (vendĭdi, vendĭtum).
send, to, mittĕre (mīsi, missum).
serviceable, to be, prodesse, profui,
service, on, militiæ. [*dat.*
sharpen, to, acuĕre (acui, acūtum).
shear, to, tondēre (totondi, tonsheep, ov-is, f. [sum).
shepherd, past-or, ōris.
shore, litt-us, ŏris, n.
short, brevis.
should, *to be translated by* part. in dus. See 184—186.
show, to, monstrare.
shrub, frutex, frutĭc-is, f.
shut, to, claudĕre (clausi).
side, on this, cis (prep.).
side, latus, latĕr-is, n.
silver, argent-um.
simple, simpl-ex, ĭcis.
sin, to, peccare.
sing, to, cantare: canĕre (cĕcĭni,
skilful, perītus, *gen.* [cantum).
slave, serv-us, i.
slave; to be the slave of, servire, dat.
slay, to, occīdĕre (occīdi, occīsum).
sleep, to, dormīre.
slip away, to, elābi, elapsus.
sloth, ignavia.
slothful, ignāvus.

slow, tardus.
small, parvus.
snake, angu-is, is, m.
snatch, to, ar-ripĕre, io (ripui,
snow, ni-x, vis. [reptum).
Socrates, Socrăt-es, is.
some (= some of), alĭquid *with gen.*
some, alĭquis: *pl.* nonnulli.
some time or other, aliquando.
something, alĭquid.
son, fili-us, i. V. fili.
soon, cito.
sorrow, dol-or, ōris.
sound, son-us, i.
sow, to, serĕre (sēvi, sătum).
space-of-two-years, biennium.
space-of-three-years, triennium.
spare, to, parcĕre (peperci), dat.
speak, to, loqui, locūtus. [191.
spend time, to, impendĕre, dat.
spring, ver, veris, n.
sprinkle, to, adspergĕre, adspersi.
stability, stabilĭta-s, tis.
stand, to, stāre (stĕti).
star, stella.
state, civĭta-s, tis. [ŏris.
strength, vir-es, ium, *pl.*, rob-ur,
succour, to, succurrĕre, dat.
sum-of-money, pecunia.
summer, æsta-s, tis.
sun, sol, solis, *m.*
superfluous, supervacuus.
surround, to, cingĕre (cinxi, cinc-
swear, to, jurare. [tum).
sweet, dulcis.
swift, vel-ox, ōcis.
swim, to, natare.

tame, to, domare (domui, domiteach, to, docēre. [tum).
tear to pieces, to, dilaniare.
temple, templum.
than, quam, or, sign of the abl. of the noun following, the word 'than' not being expressed in the Latin.
that. Conjunction, ut, with subjunctive mood: after comparatives, quo, 284.
theft, furtum.
their, suus (*if it relates to* nom. of sentence: *if not,* eorum).

there, ibi.
think, to, putare.
think little of, to, parvi æstĭmare.
threaten, to, minari, acc. *of thing*; dat. *of person threatened.*
three, tres, tria, &c.
through, per (prep.).
time, temp-us, ŏris.
timid, timĭdus.
to, ad (prep.), or, sign of dative.
top of, summus (*in agreement.* See 144, 145).
towards, erga; *sometimes* adversus. in.
town, urb-s, is.
treachery, proditi-o, ōnis.
tree, arb-or, ŏris, f.
true, verus.
truth, verum, *neut. adj. used as subst.*
twice, bis.

umpire, arbĭt-er, ri.
uncertain, incertus.
uncover, to, aperire (aperui, apertum).
understand, to, intel-lĭgĕre (lexi, lectum).
undertake, to, suscipio, sus-cĭpĕre (cēpi, ceptum).
unlearned, indoctus.
unnecessary, supervacuus.
unprofitable, inutĭlis.
unworthy, indignus (*abl.*).
unwilling, invītus.
unwillingly, invītus. See 55.
upright, honestus.
use, to, uti, usus sum, *abl.*
useful, utĭlis.
useless, inutĭlis.

value, to, æstĭmare.
value more highly, to, pluris facĕre.
vapour, vap-or, ōris.
verse, versus, ûs.
very great, maxĭmus.
very highly, maxĭmi (*gen.*).
very many, plurĭm-i, æ, a.
very fond, studiōsus (*gen.*).
very, *sign of* superlative.
vice, viti-um.
victim, victĭma.
victory, victori-a.
virtue, virtū-s, tis.
virtuous, honestus.
virtuously, honeste.
voice, vox, vōcis.

wage, to, gerĕre (gessi, gestum).
walk, to, ambŭlare.
wall, mur-us, i.
want, to (= to be without), carēre, *abl.*
war, bellum.
wasp, vespa.
water, aqua.
way, via.
wealth, op-es, um.
well, recte (= rightly).
white, candidus.
wholesome, salūber, salubris, salubre (salūber *only for* nom. masc.).
wicked, imprŏbus.
wickedness, malitia.
wine, vinum.
wing, penna.
winter, hiem-s, hiĕmis, f.
wisdom, sapientia.
wise, sapien-s, tis.
with, cum (prep.).
with me (*after to* sup, dine, &c.), apud me.
within, intra (prep.).
without (= on the outside of), extra (prep.).
without, to be, carēre, *abl.*
without one's knowledge, clam.
wolf, lŭp-us, i.
word, verbum.
word (*when it means* promise), fides, ei; to keep one's promise, servare fidem.
worse, pejor.
worst, pessĭmus.
worthy, dignus, *abl.*
write, to, scribĕre (scripsi, scriptum).
wrong, to, violare.

year, annus.
you yourself, ipse, with second person of verb.
young (bird), pullus.
your, yours, if used of one person, tuus; if used of more than one, vest-er, ra, rum.

INDEX II.

LATIN.

To find the root of the *present* from the root of the *perfect*, we must remember how the root of the perfect was formed.

a) Thus if *āv, īv, u* precede '*it*' or any other termination of the tenses that have the root of the *perfect*, we get the root of the present by throwing them away. But sometimes *u* is to be retained.

b) We must remember that *x* is made up of *cs*, or *gs*, or *qus*: and therefore the root of the *present* ends in *c, g*, or *qu*: sometimes, however, in *v, h*, or the vowel that precedes *x*.

[*duxi, texi, coxi*, from *duco, tego, coquo,*
vixi, vexi, struxi, from *vivo, veho, struo.*]

c) We must remember that *ps may* be made up of *bs*: so that the root of the present may end in *b*; not necessarily in *p*.

(scrips-it = *scrib*-sit: root scrīb.)

d) Sometimes an *n* or *m* must be inserted before the consonant preceding '*it*,' to give the root of the present.

(vīc-it; root *vinc*: rūp-it; root *rump*.)

e) Sometimes *ĕ* must be turned into *ă*, to get the root of the present.

(jĕc-it; root *jac*.)

f) Before *s*, a '*d*' has often been thrown away.

(clausi = claud-si; root claud.)

g) An *s* before *s* is a '*b*,' '*d*,' or '*r*' in the present.

(*jussi, cessi, gessi*, from *jub-eo, ced-o, ger-o*.)

[☞ When in this index a verb is followed by *io*, the meaning is that the first person of the pres. ends in *io*.]

A, ab, abs, *from, by*.
abire, *to go away* (*from* ab-eo [1]).
absolvĕre (absolvi, absolūtum), *to acquit*.
ab-sumĕre, *to take away, destroy*.
ac, *and*.
accidĕre (cidi), *to happen*.
accipĕre, io, *to receive*.
accusare, *to accuse*.
acuĕre, *to sharpen*.
ad, *to*.
adeo, *so*.
adeptus, *see* adipiscor.
ad-esse, *to be present*, or *at hand*.
ad-ferre (*fero*, irreg. verb, p. 123), *to bring*.
adhuc, *hitherto, yet*.
adipisci (adeptus sum), *to gain, to win*.
adjumentum, *help*.
ad-jŭvare (adjūvi, adjūtum), *to help*.
ad-monēre (monui, monitum), *to admonish, remind*.
ad-olescĕre, *to grow up, to grow*.
adspect-us, ûs, *look, appearance*.
adspicĕre, io (spexi, spectum), *to behold*.
adulator, *a flatterer*.
advectus, *see* advehere.
ad-vĕhĕre (vexi, vectum), *to bring*.
adversus, *towards*.
ædificare, *to build*.

[1] See conjug. of *eo*, infin. *ire*, 161, note *k*, and Irreg. Verbs, p. 123.

ægrōtus, *sick.*
Ægypt-us, i, *Egypt.*
æquālis (adj.), *of the same age.*
æquĭtas, *equity; justice.*
æstimare, *to value.*
æsta-s, tis, *summer.*
æta-s, atis, *time of life; age; life.*
afflĭcĕre, io: pœnâ afflĭcere, *to visit with punishment.*
affirmare, *to affirm.*
ag-er, ri, *field; territory.*
agĕre, *to do* (ēgi, actum).
agricŏla, *husbandman.*
alĕre (alui, altum), *to nourish; support.*
aliquando, *some time or other.*
aliquis (p. 122, *g*), *some; some one.*
aliquid (*neut.*), *something; some.* Before a *genitive* it is to be translated by *some,* and the genitive not to have the sign '*of.*'
alius, a, ud (G. alīus), *other, another.*
Alp-es, G. ium, *the Alps.*
alterŭter, *the one or the other; one of the two.*
amare, *to love.*
amārus, *bitter.*
ambĭt-us, ûs, *bribery.*
ambŭlare, *to walk.*
amicitia, *friendship.*
amīc-us, i, *friend.*
amittĕre (amīsi, amissum), *to lose.*
amn-is, is, *a river.*
amor, *love.*
amphibium, *an amphibious animal.*
an-as, ătis, *duck.*
anguis, *a snake.*
animal, G. ālis, *an animal.*
anĭm-us, i, *the mind.*
annus, *year.*
ante, *before* (prep.).
antea, *before* (adv.).
antĕquam, *before* (conjunct.).
ante-fĕro, *I prefer.*
antrum, *cave.*
an-us, -ûs, *old woman.*
aperire (aperui, apertum), *to open; uncover.*
Apell-es, is, *Apelles.*
Apoll-o, G. ĭnis, *Apollo.*
apud, *at; amongst.*
aqua, *water.*
aqua marina, *sea-water; salt water.*
ara, *altar.*
arare, *to plough.*
arb-or, ŏris, f. *tree.*
argentum, *silver.*
Aristĭdes, *Aristides, a noble Athenian, famed for his justice.*
arma (*pl.*), *arms.*
arrīpĕre, io (arripui, arreptum), *to seize upon; snatch.*
ar-s, tis, *art.*
artificium, *an artifice.*
ascendĕre, *to ascend; climb.*
asĭn-us, i, *ass.*
at, *but.*
Athēnæ (*noun plur.*), *Athens.*
Atheniensis, *an Athenian.*
atque, *and.*
atqui, *but* or *now,* 302.
auctoritas, *authority; influence.*
auctumn-us, i, *autumn.*
audacia, *boldness.*
audax, audācis, *bold; overbold.*
audēre, *to dare* (ausus sum).
audire, *to hear.*
augēre (auxi, auctum), *to increase.*
aureus, adj. *of gold.*
aurum, *gold.*
aut, *either, or.*
auxilium, *help, aid.*
avaritia, *avarice.*
avārus, *greedy; avaricious.*
avis, *a bird.*

barbărus, *barbarous.*
beāte, *happily.*
beatus, *happy.*
bellua, *beast.*
bellum, *war.*
bene, *well.*
beneficium, *benefit.*
benefĭcus, *beneficent; bountiful.*
bestia, *a beast.*
bibĕre (bĭbi, bĭbĭtum), *to drink.*
biennium, *the space of two years; two years.*
bis, *twice.*
bonitas, *goodness.*
bonus, *good.*
brachium, *arm.*

brevis, *short.*
brut-us, a, um, *brute.*

cæcus, *blind.*
cædĕre (cecīdi, cæsum), *to slay.*
calidior, *warmer.*
calor, *heat.*
candĭdus, *white.*
canĕre (cecĭni, cantum), *to sing.*
can-is, G. is, *dog.*
cantare, *to sing.*
cant-us, ûs, *the singing.*
cap-ĕre, -io (cēpi, captum), *to take; to seize.*
capĭtis, *of the head = to death.*
capra, *she-goat.*
cap-ut, ĭtis, *head.*
carc-er, ĕris, *prison.*
carēre, *to be without* (abl.); *to do without; to want.*
carpĕre, *to pluck; card; carp at.*
Carthāg-o, ĭnis, *Carthage.*
castīgare, *to chastise.*
castr-a, -orum (pl.), *a camp.*
casu, *by chance.*
cas-us, ûs, *accident.*
catŭlus, *cub, puppy.*
cavē (imperat. of caveo), *take care.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
celsus, *high, tall.*
cēpi, *see* capere.
cera, *wax.*
certāmen, *contest.*
certus, *certain; sure.*
cervus, *a stag.*
christiānus, *christian:—a christian.*
cib-us, i, *food.*
cingĕre (cinxi, cinctum), *to surround.*
circa, circum, } *about.*
circum-linere (levi, lĭtum), *to smear round; anoint; cover.*
circum-spicĕre, io (spexi, spectum), *to look around.*
cis, citra, } *on this side of.*
cito, *quickly.*
civ-is, is, *a citizen.*
civĭt-as, ātis, *a city; state.*
clam, *without the knowledge of* (prep. abl.).
clamare, *to cry out.*
claudĕre (clausi), *to shut.*
coact-, *see* cogere.
cœlum, *heaven; the sky.*
cœna, *dinner.*
cōgĕre (coegi, coactum), *to compel.*
cogitare, *to consider.*
cognitio, *knowledge.*
cognĭtus, *known.*
colĕre (colui, cultum), *to cultivate.*
collīneare, *to hit the mark.*
col-or, ōris, *colour.*
committere (commīsi, commissum), *to entrust.*
commŏdum, *advantage.*
commorari, *to delay; to remain.*
comparare, *to raise* (forces).
compellare, *to call.*
complēre (plēvi, plētum), *to fill.*
comprehendĕre (prehendi, prehensum), *to seize.*
concio, onis, *f. assembly.*
conclav-e, is, *a room,* n.
con-cordia, *concord.*
condĕre (condidi, conditum), *to build; found; bury.*
confĕro *, I *carry* (together); confĕro culpam, I throw *the blame.*
conferre se, *to betake themselves.*
confīdĕre, *to feel confident.*
con-fĭtēri (fessus sum), *to confess.*
confūsus (partic. of confundere), *confused.*
conservare, *to observe* (duties).
consilium, *intention, design.*
consolatio, *consolation.*
conspect-us, ûs, *sight.*
conspicĕre, io (spexi, spectum), *to behold.*
constat, *it is an allowed fact; it is known.*
con-stituĕre (stitui, stitūtum), *to settle.*
construĕre (struxi, structum), *construct, build* (a nest).
consuetud-o, ĭnis, *custom.*

* See *fero,* irreg. verb, p. 123.

consulat-us, ûs, *consulship.*
consulĕre (sului, sultum), *to consult.*
contect-, *see* contegere.
contegĕre (texi, tectum), *to cover.*
con-temnĕre (tempsi, temptum), *to despise.*
contemplari, *to look at.*
contendĕre, *to contend, to strive.*
contentus, *contented* (abl.).
contra, *against.*
contrarius, *contrary.*
coquĕre (coxi, coctum), *to cook; bake; ripen.*
copi-æ, arum, plur. *forces.*
cor, cordis, *heart*
coram, *before.*
Corinthus, *Corinth.*
cornu, n. *horn.*
corōna, *crown; garland.*
corp-us, ŏris, *body.*
cor-rigĕre, *to correct.*
cor-rumpĕre, *to corrupt.*
cort-ex, ĭcis, *bark.*
crabro, *hornet.*
crastĭnus, a, um, *to-morrow's;* crastinus dies, *to-morrow.*
credĕre (credĭdi, creditum), *to believe.*
cremare, *to burn.*
crescĕre (crevi, cretum), *to grow.*
cubĭtum (ire), *to go to bed; to roost.*
culpa, *fault.*
cult-or, ōris, *a cultivator.*
cunctatio, *delay.*
cuncti, *all.*
cunctus (with sub.), *the whole.*
cupidĭt-as, ātis, *desire.*
cupĭdus, *desirous.*
cupĕre, io (cupīvi, cupītum), *to desire; wish.*
curare, *to take care.*
currĕre (cucurri, cursum), *to run.*
curr-us, ûs, *a chariot.*

damnare, *to condemn.*
dăre (dĕdi, dătum), *to give.*
de, *from; concerning.*
dealbatus, *whitewashed.*
debĕre, *to owe.*
decerpĕre (cerpsi, cerptum), *to pluck.*
decĭdĕre, *to fall off.*
decĭpĕre, io (cēpi, ceptum), *to deceive.*
declarare, *to declare.*
de-esse, *to be wanting.*
degĕre, *to live.*
deglūb-ĕre (glupsi, gluptum), *to flay.*
deleo (delēvi, delētum), *to destroy.*
delinquĕre, *to transgress.*
delīrus, *crazy.*
deme-ns, ntis, *mad.*
descendĕre, *to come down.*
detĕgĕre (texi, tectum), *to discover.*
de-terrēre, *to deter.*
Deus, *God.*
de-vincĕre (vīci, victum), *to conquer.*
dicĕre (dixi, dictum), *to say; speak* *.
dictator, *dictator (a high office at Rome).*
di-es, ei, *day.*
difficilis, *difficult.*
diffīdĕre, *to distrust* (dat.).
dignitas, *dignity.*
dignus, *worthy* (abl.).
dilaniare, *to tear to pieces.*
discĕre (didĭci), *to learn.*
disciplīna, *discipline; teaching.*
discrĕpare, *to be different.*
dis-jungĕre (junxi, junctum), *to separate.*
displĭcēre, *to displease* (dat.).
dis-ponĕre (posui, positum), *to arrange.*
diu, *long; for a long time.*
diutius, *longer.*
dividere (vīsi, vīsum), *to divide.*
divinitas, *divinity; divine origin.*
divinus, *divine.*
diviti-æ, arum, *riches.*
dŏcēre, *to teach.*
dol-or, oris, *pain; grief.*
domare (domui, domĭtum), *to tame; master.*
domi, *at home.*
domĭn-us, i, *master.*

* This word drops *e* from the imperative: *dic.*

domo, *from home.*
domum, *home, to* or *towards* (acc.).
domus, *house.*
donare, *to bestow.*
donum, *gift.*
dormire, *to sleep.*
dubitare, *to doubt.*
ducĕre (duxi, ductum), *to lead; reckon.*
dulcis, *sweet.*
duo, *two.*
duodĕcim, *twelve.*
durare, *to last.*

e, ex, *of; from; out of.*
e-i; e-o, &c. *See* is, ea, id, p. 121.
ēdĕre (ēdi, ēsum), *to eat.*
edicĕre (dixi, dictum), *to make a proclamation.*
effectus. *See* efficere.
efficax, *effectual.*
efficĕre, feci, fectum, *to accomplish.*
effugĕre, *to escape, avoid.*
ēgi. *See* agĕre.
ego, *I* (116).
egēre (gen. or abl.), *to need.*
egressus, *partic. of* egrĕdi, *to go out.*
e-lābi (lapsus sum), *to slip away.*
elegantia, *elegance.*
eleph-as, antis, *elephant.*
elĭgĕre, *to choose.*
emendare, *to correct.*
ēmĕre (ēmi, emtum *or* emptum), *to buy.*
enīti, *to strive.*
ens-is, is, *sword.*
Epaminondas, *a Theban general.*
epistŏla, *a letter.*
eques, equĭtis, *horseman.*
equ-us, i, *horse.*
erectus, *raised up; erect.*
erga, *towards* (acc.).
eripĕre (erip-io, ui), *to snatch out.*
error, *an error; a mistake.*
erumpĕre (erupi, eruptum), *to break out.*
esto, *imperat. of* esse, p. 120.
esurīre, *to be hungry.*
et, *and; both; even.*
etiam, *even; also.*
etiam atque etiam, *again and again.*
evectus, *partic. of* evehĕre, *to raise.*
evertĕre (verti, versum), *to overthrow, pull down.*
evŏlare, *to fly out of.*
ex, *out of; from* (abl.).
excellĕre, *excel.*
excĭtare, *rouse up; awaken.*
excruciare, *to torment.*
exemplum, *an example.*
exercēre, *to exercise; practise.*
exercĭt-us, ūs, *army.*
exiguus, *small.*
ex-ire (ex-eo), *to go out,* p. 124.
existimare, *to think.*
expellĕre (pŭli, pulsum), *to drive out; banish.*
expugnare, *to carry by assault* (a town, &c.).
exspectare, *to expect; wait for.*
exspīrare, *to expire.*
externus, *external.*
extimescĕre, *to dread.*
extra, *without.*

faba, *a bean.*
fabulosus, *fabulous.*
fac-ĕre, 10 (fēci, factum), *to do; to make;* imperat. fac, *not* face.
faci-es, ei, *face.*
facĭlis, *easy:* facile, *easily.*
fallĕre (fefelli), *to deceive; break* (one's word, &c.).
fam-es, is, *hunger; famine.*
familiarĭt-as, ātis, *intimacy.*
fatēri (fassus sum), *to confess, own.*
fatīgare, *to fatigue.*
fāvēre (fāvi, fautum), *to favour* (dat.).
febr-is (abl. i), *fever.*
feci, *see* facere.
felicitas, atis, *happiness.*
fel-ix, īcis, *happy.*
fere, *nearly, almost:* nemo fere, *hardly any body.*
fero. *See* ferre.
ferox, *savage.*
ferre (p. 123), *to bear.*
fidelis, *faithful.*
fid-es, ēi, *faith; fidelity;* one's *word.*

fieri (factus sum, p. 123), *to become; to be made.*
figūra, *figure.*
fili-a, æ, *daughter.*
fili-us, i, *son.* Voc. *fili.*
finire, *to finish.*
firmus, *firm.*
fit, *becomes:* from fio, p. 123.
flagĭtare, *to demand; to call for* (with importunity).
flagitium, *crime.*
flo-s, ris, *flower.*
florēre, *to bloom; to flourish.*
flum-en, ĭnis, *river,* n.
folium, *leaf.*
fon-s, ntis, m. *fountain.*
fore, *from* esse, p. 120.
forma, *shape.*
formīca, *an ant.*
fortĭter, *courageously.*
fortuna, *fortune.*
fovēre (fōvi, fōtum), *to cherish.*
frangĕre (frēgi, frāctum), *to break.*
frat-er, ris, *brother.*
fratricīda, *a fratricide.*
fraudare, *to defraud.*
fretus, *relying on,* abl.
frigidus, adj. *cold.*
frig-us, ŏris, *cold,* n.
fruct-us, ûs, *fruit.*
frui, *to enjoy,* abl.
frumentum, *corn.*
frut-ex, icis, *shrub.*
fui, *perf. of* esse, p. 120.
fund-us, i, *estate; farm.*
fungi (functus), *to discharge,* abl.
furĕre, *to be mad.*
furtum, *theft.*
futūrus, *about to be* (partic. of *esse*); *future,* p. 120.

gallīna, *hen.*
Gallus, *a Gaul.*
garrulus, *talkative; chattering.*
gen-us, ĕris, *race, kind,* n.
gerĕre (gessi, gestum), *to carry on; wage.*
gloria, *glory.*
grandīnare, *to hail.*
grandis, *large.*
granum, *a grain.*
gratia, *favour, kindness, gratitude.*
gratus, *agreeable.*
gravis, *heavy.*
grex, grĕgis (m.), *flock.*
gru-s, is, *crane.*

habēre, *to have*; to consider.*
habĕri, *to be considered.*
habitare, *to dwell; live.*
haurire, *to swallow.*
herba, *herb.*
hiem-s, hiĕmis, *winter.*
hic, hæc, hoc, *this,* p. 121.
hic (adv.), *here.*
hinc, *hence.*
Homerus, *Homer* (a Greek poet).
homo, ĭnis, *man.*
honeste, *virtuously.*
honestus, *honorable; virtuous.*
hon-or, ōris, *honour.*
hortari, *to exhort.*
hort-us, i, *garden.*
hostis, *enemy.*
humānus, *natural to man; human.*
humi, *on the ground.*

ibi, *there.*
idem, eadem, ĭdem, *the same,* p. 121.
idoneus, *fit for* (dat.).
ignārus, *ignorant* (gen.).
ignāvus, *lazy; sluggish.*
ign-is, is, m. *fire.*
ignoratio, *ignorance.*
ignoscĕre (nōvi), *to pardon.*
ill-e, a, ud, *he, she, it; that,* p. 121.
illustrare, *to illumine.*
imbecillus, *weak.*
immensus, *immense.*
immergĕre (mersi), *to plunge in.*
immĭnēre, *to hang over; impend* [(dat.).
immobĭlis, *immoveable.*
immŏlare, *to sacrifice.*
immortalis, *immortal.*
impar, āris, *odd* (said of numbers).
impĕdīre, *to hinder.*
impellĕre (pŭli, pulsum), *to impel.*
impendĕre (pendi, pensum), *to spend.*
imperare, *to command* (dat.), 191.

* Also '*to take*' (one thing for another).

imperium, *command; power.*
impĕtrare, *to gain a request.*
impius, *impious.*
implētus, *filled* (partic. of *implēre*).
impr*ŏ*bus, *wicked.*
in, *into* (acc.); *in* (abl.), &c.
incendium, *conflagration, fire.*
inceptum, *an undertaking.*
incertus, *uncertain.*
incĭdĕre, *to fall into; enter.*
in-cognĭtus, *unknown.*
in-cultus, *un-cultivated.*
indignus, *unworthy* (abl.).
indoctus, *unlearned.*
indulgēre (dulsi, dultum), *to indulge* (dat.), 191.
industria, *industry.*
infelix, īcis, *unfortunate.*
infestus, *hostile.*
infirmissimus, *very weak*, superl. of *infirmus.*
infra, *below.*
ingenium, *ability; mind.*
ingen-s, tis, *huge.*
inhibēre, *to restrain.*
inhonestus, *dishonourable.*
inīquus, *unjust.*
injuria, *injury.*
innoxius, *harmless.*
inopia, *want, destitution.*
inspīrare, *to breathe into.*
instituĕre, *to appoint; constitute.*
intĕ-ger, gra, grum, *whole.*
intelligĕre (lexi, lectum), *to understand.*
inter, *between; amongst.*
interdum, *sometimes.*
interesse, *to be engaged in.*
interfui (*see* inter-esse).
interr*ŏ*gare, *to ask.*
intervallum, *interval.*
intra, *within.*
intuēri, *to behold, see.*
inutīlis, *useless; unfit for.*
invĕnire (vēni, ventum), *to find; invent.*
invīdēre (vīdi, visum), *to envy* (dat.).
invītus, *unwilling. To be construed* unwillingly.
ips-e, a, um, G. ius, *self, myself, thyself, itself, &c.*
īra, *anger.*
irasci (iratus), *to be angry.*
irritare, *to irritate.*
is, ea, id, *he, she, it.* See Pronouns, p. 121.
Ist-er, ri, *the Danube.*
it-er, inĕris, *journey*, n.
ita, *thus; so.*

jacĕre, jacio (jēci, jactum), *to throw, hurl.*
jaculari, *to hurl a dart, shoot.*
jam, *now, already.*
Janus, *Janus* (a heathen god).
jubēre (jussi), *to bid, command.*
jucunditas, *pleasantness, pleasure.*
jucundus, *pleasant.*
jud-ex, ĭcis, *judge.*
judĭcare, *to judge.*
Jupiter, G. Jovis, &c., *Jupiter*, pp. 124, 125.
jurare, *to swear.*
ju-s, ris, *justice, right.*
jussum, *a command.*
justus, *just.*
juvĕnis, *young man.*
juxta, *close by* (prep.).

Lacedæmonii, *the Lacedæmonians.*
lacess-ĕre (īvi, itum), *to provoke.*
lab-or, ōris, *labour.*
labōrare, *to labour; to be in trouble.*
lædĕre (læsi), *to hurt* (acc.).
lana, *wool.*
lat-us, ĕris, *side*, n.
laudare, *to praise.*
lectio, *reading.*
lēgatus, *an ambassador; a lieutenant.*
lĕgĕre (lēgi, lectum), *to read.*
legiŏ, *a legion.*
levis, *light.*
lex, lēgis, *law.*
lib-er, ĕra, erum, *free.*
lib-er, -ri, *book.*
liberalita-s, ātis, *liberality.*
liberare, *to set free.*
licet, *it is allowed* (used impers. with mihi, tibi, &c., for *I may, you may*, &c.).
ligneus, *wooden.*
liquescĕre (licui), *to melt.*
litĕræ, pl. *a letter; literature.*
lit-us, ŏris, *shore*, n.

locŭples, ētis, *rich.*
locus (*pl.* loci *and* loca), *place.*
longus, *long.*
loqui (locūtus sum), *to speak.*
lubīdo, ĭnis, *lust.*
ludĕre (lūsi), *to play.*
luna, *the moon.*
lup-us, i, *wolf.*
luscinia, *nightingale.*
lux, lucis, *light.*

magist-er, ri, *master.*
magistrat-us, ûs, *magistrate.*
magni, *at a great* (price).
magnitud-o, inis, *magnitude, size.*
magnŏpĕre, *earnestly.*
magnus, *great.* With 'voice' *loud.*
man-us, ûs, *hand,* f. Also *band* or *body* of soldiers.
major, *greater.*
male, *badly.*
malitia, *wickedness.* [p. 121.
malo, malui, malle, *I had rather,*
malum (neut.), *evil; an evil.*
malus, *bad.*
mandare, *to enjoin.*
mar-e, is, n. *sea.*
marīna (aqua), *salt* (*water*) *.
Massilia, *Marseilles.*
mat-er, ris, *mother.*
maxime, adv. *most, the most.*
maxĭmi, gen. *at a very great price; very highly.*
maximus, *greatest.*
medēri, *to heal* (dat.), 191.
mediocritas, *a middle point; the mean.*
medius, *middle* (construed '*the middle* or *midst,*' and '*of*' put before its substantive, as medius rivus, *the middle of the river*).
mel, mellis (n.), *honey.*
memoria, *memory, recollection.*
mendacium, *a lie.*
men-s, ntis, *f. mind.*
metuĕre, *to fear.*
met-us, ûs, *fear.*
me-us, a, um, *mine; my.* Voc. mas., mi.
migrare, *to remove* (intrans.).
mil-es, itis, *a soldier.*
militiæ, *on service, in the field.*
mille, *a thousand.*
minari, *to threaten.*
minor, *less.*
mis-er, era, erum, *miserable.*
miserēri, *to pity* (gen.).
miseret, 287.
miseria, *misery.*
mittĕre (mīsi, missum), *to send.*
mōbilis, *moveable.*
modus, *manner, means.*
mœrĕre, *to mourn.*
mollis, *soft.*
momordi. *See* mordēre.
monēre, *to advise.*
monocĕr-os, ōtis, *a unicorn.*
mon-s, tis, m. *a mountain.*
monstrare, *to show.*
morari, *to delay.*
mordēre (mŏmordi, morsum), *to bite.*
mores, pl. *character; morals.*
mori, ior (mortuus sum), *to die.*
morōsus, *ill-humoured.*
mor-s, tis, *death.*
mortalis, *mortal.*
mortĭfer (a, um), *fatal.*
mortuus, *dead.* *See* mori.
movēre (mōvi, mōtum), *to move* (trans.); movēri, *to move* (intrans.).
mulctare, *to fine* (abl.).
muli-er, ĕris, *woman.*
multitud-o, ĭnis, *multitude.*
multus, *many, much.*
mundus, *world.*
munire, *to fortify, to protect.*
mur-us, i, *wall.*
mutare, *to change.*

nasci, hatus sum, *to be born.*
natare, *to swim.*
natūra, *nature.*
natus, *born.* Part. from *nascor.*
navigatio, *navigation.*
nav-is, is, *ship.*
ne—quidem (*with a word between*), *not even.*

* Properly *sea-water.*

nĕ, *at the end of a word, is not to be translated* *, *but the sentence is to be translated as a question.*
nē, *with the subj. is to be translated by the imperative.*
nec, neque, } *neither, nor; and not.*
negare, *to deny.*
neglĭgĕre (neglexi, neglectum), *neglect, disregard.*
nem-o, ĭnis, *nobody.*
nequire (nequeo, *like* eo), *to be unable.*
ne-scire, *not to know.*
nex, necis, *death, murder.*
nidus, i, *nest.*
nihil, *nothing* †; to be construed '*no*,' when followed by *gen.*,
nihĭli, *at nothing.* [56.
nimis, *too.*
nimius, *too much.*
nisi, *unless.*
nix, nĭvis, *snow.*
nobilis, *noble; of rank.*
nobilitare, *to ennoble, to make renowned.*
nocēre, *to hurt* (dat.), 191.
non, *not.*
nondum, *not yet.*
nonnĕ, *not*, used in questions (*is not?* &c.). *The* auxiliary verb *must be placed before the* not.
nonnulli, *some.*
nost-er, ra, rum, *our.*
nostri, gen. plur. of ego, *I.*
novus, *new.*
nubĕre (nupsi, nuptum), *to marry* (dat.).
nub-es, is, *cloud.*
null-us, a, um, G. īus, *none; no.*
num, *not to be translated when it is the first word. If not the first word, to be translated* whether.
numerare, *to number, count.*
numerus, *number.*
nuntiare, *to announce.*
nunquam, *never.*

ob, *on account of.*
ob oculos, *before our eyes.*
obducĕre (duxi, ductum), *overlay; cover.*
obēdire, *to obey* (dat.), 191.
ob-esse, *to be prejudicial* to (dat.).
oblivisci (oblītus sum), *to forget* (gen.).
obscure, *obscurely.*
ob-sistere, *to withstand, prevent* (dat.).
ob-stare (with *dat.*), *to hinder.*
obtĭnēre, *to obtain.*
occasi-o, ōnis, *opportunity.*
occīdĕre (cīdi, cisum), *to kill; slay.*
oceăn-us, i, *the ocean.*
ocŭlus, i, *eye.*
odium, *hatred.*
odorat-us, ûs, *smell, scent.*
offendere (di, sum), *to offend* (dat.).
of-fĕro (see irreg. verb *fero*, p. 123), *to offer.*
officium, *duty.*
olim, *formerly.*
olorīnus, adj. *of the swan.*
omnis, *all.*
operire, *to cover.*
opes, G. um, *resources; wealth.*
oportet, *it behoves*, 268.
oppugnare, *to attack.*
ops, opis, f. *power, assistance.*
optimus, *superl. of* bonus, *best.*
orare, *to pray.*
orati-o, ōnis, *speech.*
orat-or, ōris, *orator.*
ostia, *pl. mouth* (of a river).
ovis, *sheep.*

pabulatum, *to forage* (supine).
pallium, *a cloak.*
palpĕbræ, *the eyelids.*
par, *equal; even* (opposed to *odd*).

* Except in dependent questions: but where these occur, the necessary explanation is given. See 319, *b*.

† It is sometimes by '*not*,' with *at all*.

parare, *to prepare; to provide.*
parcĕre (peperci), *to spare* (dat.),
paren-s, tis, *parent.* [191.
parēre, *to obey* (dat.), 191.
parĕre (pario), *to bring forth.*
par-s, tis, *part.*
parsimonia, *frugality.*
parvi (gen.), *at a little.*
parvum (neut. adj.), *little.*
parvus, *little, small.*
pastor, *shepherd.*
pate-fieri (see *fio*, irreg. verb, p. 123), *to be laid bare; to be discovered.*
pat-er, ris, *father.*
pati, ior, passus sum, *to suffer.*
patientia, *patience.*
patria, *country.*
patrius, *paternal, fatherly.*
pauc-i, æ, a, *few.*
pauper, paupĕris, *poor.*
paupert-as, ātis, *poverty.*
pavimentum, *pavement.*
pavor, *fear, dread.*
pax, G. pācis, *peace.*
peccare, *to sin.*
peccatum, *a sin.*
pecunia, *money.*
pec-us, ŏris, n. (*any small* tame *animal*), *sheep.*
penes, *in the power of* (prep.).
penna, *feather.*
peperci, *see* parcĕre.
per, *through.*
peregrinari, *to go abroad:* aves peregrinantes, *migratory birds; birds of passage.*
perficĕre, perficio, *to accomplish.*
perfidia, *perfidy.*
periculōsus, *dangerous.*
periculum, *danger.*
perinde, *just so;* perinde est ac si, *it is just as if.*
perītus, *skilful; skilled in* (gen.).
Pers-æ, arum, *the Persians.*
per-solvĕre (solvi, solūtum), *to pay;* per-solvere pœnas, *to suffer punishment* *.
persuadēre (suasi), *to persuade* (dat.).
permănēre (mansi, mansum), *to remain.*
permōtus, part. pass. of permŏvēre, *to move.*
perniciosus, *hurtful.*
perpessus, *partic. of* perpĕti, *to suffer.*
perpetuo, *for ever.*
perpetuus, *perpetual;* in perpetuum, *for ever.*
perturbatio, *perturbation.*
pervenire, *to arrive.*
petĕre (petīvi, petītum), *to seek; make for.*
philosophia, *philosophy.*
piet-as, ātis, *dutiful affection.*
piget, *it vexes* (used with acc. of pronoun), 287.
pingĕre (pinxi, pictum), *to paint.*
pisc-is, G. is, *fish.*
pius, *pious.*
placare, *to appease.*
placēre (placui, placĭtum), *to please* (dat.), 191.
planta, *plant.*
Plat-o, ōnis, *Plato* (a Grecian philosopher).
plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *most.*
plerumque, *generally:*
plurĭmi, *very many; most.*
plus, G. pluris. Pl. -es, -a, G. -ium, &c., *more.*
pocul-um, i, *a cup.*
pœna, *punishment.*
pœnitet, *it repents,* 287 (used with acc. of prenoun).
poëta, *poet.*
pomum, *apple.*
ponĕre (posui, posĭtum), *to place.*
pon-s, tis, m. *bridge.*
popularis, *popular.*
populus, i, *people.*
porta, *gate.*
posĭtum, *see* ponere.
posui, *see* ponĕre.
posse, *to be able; can,* p. 123.
post, *after* (acc.).
post, adv. *afterwards.*
poten-s, tis, *powerful.*
potio, *a drink, draught.*

* Properly *to pay penalties.*

potiri, ior, *to get possession of.*
potius, *rather.*
præ, *in comparison of* (prep.).
præceptum, *precept.*
prædītus, *endued with.*
præsen-s, tis, *present.*
præstan-s, G. tis, *excellent.*
præstat, *it is better.*
præter, *besides, except; beyond.*
præterītus, *past.*
pratum, *meadow.*
premĕre (pressi), *to press.*
pretiosus, *valuable.*
primus, *first.*
principāt-us, ûs, *the first place.*
privare, *to deprive.*
privatus, *private.*
pro, *for; suitable to.*
prod-esse (profui), *to profit; to do good to* (dat.).
proditi-o, ōnis, *treachery.*
prœlium, *battle.*
profectus, *part. of* proficisci, *to set out.*
profui, *see* prodesse.
prohĭbēre, *to prevent, hinder.*
prol-es, is, *offspring, young.*
prope, *near.*
propensus, *inclined.*
propior, *nearer.*
propter, *on account of.*
protinus, *forthwith, immediately.*
providentia, *providence.*
provĭdus, *circumspect, wise.*
prudentia, *prudence; practical wisdom.*
pud-or, ōris, *shame, bashfulness.*
puella, *girl.*
puer, G. puĕri, *boy.*
pugna, *battle.*
pugnare, *to fight.*
pullus, *young* (of a bird).
pulv-is, ĕris, *dust.*
putare, *to think.*

qua-dam, abl. fem. of *qui-dam.*
quadraginta, *forty.*
quærĕre, quæsivi, *to seek, enquire.*
quæstio, *question.*
qualis, *of what kind?*
quam, *than, as. Before adj.* how.
quam plurĭmi, *as many as possible.*
quam maxĭmus, *as great as possible.*
quando, *when.*
quantum, *how much.*
quantus, *how great.*
quare, *why?*
quartus, *fourth.*
quĕ, *and.*
querc-us, ûs, *oak.*
qui, quæ, quod, *who; which; that.*
quia, *because.*
quicquid (neut. of *quis-quis*), *whatever.*
quid (neut. of *quis*), *why?*
quidam *, *a certain; some.*
quidem, *indeed;* nē quidem, *not even.*
quiescere (quievi), *to rest, keep quiet.*
quis, *who?* quid, *what?*
quis (indefinite), *any.*
quisquam, *any body.*
quisque, quæque, quidque, *each; every body.*
quo, *that* (putting '*the*' before the comparative; quo melius, *the better*): *whither.*
quod, neut. of *qui.*
quod, adv. *because.*
quotidie, *daily; every day.*
quum, *when;* if followed by tum, *both,* tum being *and.*

raro, *seldom.*
ratio, onis, *reason, an account.*
recordari, *to remember* (gen.).
recipĕre, io, *to receive.*
recte, *rightly; well.*
rectus, *right.*
recusare, *to refuse.*
reddĕre (reddidi, redditum), *to return:* reddere rationem, *to give an account.*
redire (red-eo), *to return:* eo, p. 124.
re-ferre, fero (p. 123): referre gratiam, *to show kindness in return.*

* Declined like *qui* with *dam* added.

re-ficĕre, io (to make again), *to refresh.*
refugĕre, io (fugi, fugitum), *to flee back.*
regĕre (rexi, rectum), *to rule.*
regīna, *a queen.*
regi-o, ōnis, f. *a district, country.*
regnare, *to reign.*
regnum, *kingdom.*
reliquus, *remaining; the other.*
reminisci, *to recollect* (gen. *or* [acc.).
repente, *suddenly.*
reperire, *to find.*
reprehendĕre, di, sum, *to blame.*
r-es, ei, *thing, affair.*
resistĕre (restĭtī), *to resist* (dat.).
respondēre (responsum), *to answer* (dat.).
res-publica *, *commonwealth.*
retĭnēre, *to retain.*
retŭl-; *see* referre.
reus, *an accused person.*
rever-tĕre, si, sum, *to return.*
revŏcare, *to recall.*
rex, rēgis, *king.*
Rhenus, *the Rhine.*
Rhodănus, *the Rhone.*
ridēre (risi), *to laugh; to laugh at.*
rĭgēre, *to be stiff; to be dried up.*
ris-us, ûs, *laughter.*
rob-ur, ŏris, *strength.*
robustus, *strong.*
rŏgare, *to ask.*
Roma, *Rome.*
Romanus, *Roman.*
rotundus, *round.*
rugire, *to roar.*
rure, *from the country.*
ruri, *in the country.*
rūs (as an acc. after a verb of motion), *into the country.*

sacerd-os, ōtis, *a priest.*
sæpe, *often.*
sagitta, *an arrow.*
salsus, *salt.*
saltare, *to dance.*
salūber, *wholesome; salubrious.*
sanare, *to heal; to cure.*
sangu-is, ĭnis, *blood.*
sapĕre, io, *to be wise.*
sapien-s, tis, *wise.*
sapientia, *wisdom.*
sapientissime, *most wisely.*
Sard-es, G. ium (used only in plur.), *Sardes.*
satiare, *to satisfy* (with food, &c.).
satis, *enough.*
Saturn-us, i, *Saturn; a heathen god.*
saxum, *rock, stone.*
scelestus, *wicked.*
sceptrum, *sceptre.*
scientia, *knowledge.*
Scipi-o, ōnis, *Scipio, a Roman general.*
scire, *to know.*
scribĕre (scripsi, scriptum), *to write.*
scriptum, *a writing.*
secundum, *along; according to.*
secūtus, *see* sequi.
sĕ, acc. of sui, 116.
sed, *but.*
sedēre, *to sit.*
seg-es, ĕtis, *a crop.*
sem-en, G. ĭnis, *seed,* n.
semper, *always.*
sempitern-us, a, um, *eternal.*
senect-us, ūtis, *old age.*
sen-ex, is, *an old man.* G. pl. um.
sentire (sensi), *to feel; perceive.*
sepelire, *to bury.*
sequi (secutus sum), *to follow.*
serĕre (sēvi, sătum), *to sow; plant.*
serpen-s, tis, *a serpent; snake.*
serus, *late.*
servare, *to keep; observe.*
servire, *to be a slave to; to serve* (dat.).
serv-us, i, *slave.*
sese, the acc. of *sui,* doubled (see 116).
severĭtas, *strictness.*
si, *if.*
sic, *so.*
similis, *like* (dat.).
simpl-ex, ĭcis, *simple.*
simulare, *to pretend.*

* This word is really an *adjective* in agreement with *res;* and is so declined. Gen. *rei-publicæ.* Acc. *rem-publicam.*

simulati-o, ōnis, *an assumed appearance.*
sine, *without.*
sitire, *to be thirsty.*
sive, *or, whether* (299).
sol, solis, *the sun.*
solum, *only.*
sol-us, a, um (G. īus), *only, alone.*
somnus, *sleep.*
son-us, i, *a sound.*
spargĕre (sparsi), *to scatter.*
spectare, *to behold.*
sperare, *to hope for.*
spoliare, *to rob* (of), *despoil,* abl.
stabilit-as, ātis, *stability.*
stare (stĕti, statum), *to stand; to cost.*
statim, *immediately.*
stella, *star.*
studēre, *to devote oneself to; aim at* (dat.).
studiose, *attentively.*
studiōsus, *very fond.*
studium, *eager pursuit; exertion, study.*
stultitia, *folly.*
stultus, *foolish.*
sub, *under.*
subire (sub-eo), p. 124, *to undergo.*
subvenire (vēni, ventum), } *to succour*
succurrĕre (curri, cursum), } (dat.).
sudare, *to be in a perspiration.*
sumĕre (sumpsi, sumptum), *to take.*
summus, *highest, greatest.* Often to be construed by '*top*,' its subst. following in the gen.; as, summus mons, *the top of the mountain.*
sumpt-us, ûs, *expense.*
super, *above* (276).
superare, *to surpass; conquer.*
supervacuus, *unnecessary; superfluous.*
suppeditare, *to supply.*
supra, *above.*
surdus, *deaf.*
suscipĕre (cepi, ceptum), *to undertake.*
sustinere, *to endure.*
su-us, a, um, *his, hers (her), its; their* (or *his, &c., own*).
Syracūsæ, arum (used only in plur.), *Syracuse.*
tacēre, *to be silent; hold one's tongue.*
tam, *so.*
tamen, *yet, nevertheless.*
tantum, *only.*
tantus, *so great.*
tardus, *slow.*
taurus, *a bull.*
tegĕre (texi, tectum), *to cover.*
temĕre, *inconsiderately.*
templum, *a temple.*
temp-us, ŏris, *time.*
tenēre (tenui), *to hold, restrain.*
tentare, *to try.*
terra, *earth.*
terrēnus, *belonging to the earth; earthly.*
terrēre (terrui, terrĭtum), *to frighten.*
tenus, *as far as; up to* (gen.).
Theb-æ, ārum (used only in plur.), *Thebes.*
timēre, *to fear.*
timĭdus, *timid.*
Timole-on, ontis, *Timoleon, a man's name.*
tondeo (totondi, tonsum), *to shear.*
torqu-is, is, *a chain* (worn round the neck).
tot-us, a, um, G. ius, *whole.*
trans, *across.*
trans-ire, *to pass over* (*so*, p. 124).
trans-mittĕre, *to cross.*
tres, tria, G. ium, *three.*
triangulus, *a triangle.*
triennium, *a space of three years.*
tristis, *sad.*
Troja, *Troy* (a town in Asia Minor).
truncus, *a trunk.*
tuli, &c. (see *fero*, p. 123.)
tum, *then:* tum—quum, *both—and.*
turp-is, n. turpe, *disgraceful.*
tutus, *safe.*
tuus, *thy, your.*
tyrannus, *a tyrant.*
ubi, *where?*
ull-us (a, um; G. īus), *any.*

ultra, *beyond.*
ultro, *voluntarily.*
unde, *whence.*
unquam, *ever.*
un-us (a, um; G. īus), *one.*
urbs, G. urbis, *city.*
urĕre (ussi, ustum), *to burn.*
urs-us, i, *bear.*
usitatus, *customary; familiar.*
us-us, ûs, *use, advantage.*
ut, *that.*
ut-er, ra, rum (G. utrius), *which* (of two).
uti (usus sum), *to use* (abl.).
utĭlis, *useful; good for.*
utilitas, *usefulness, use.*
usque, *quite up to; to.*
uva, *grape.*

vacare, *to have leisure* (dat.).
valen-s, tis, *strong.*
vapor, *vapour.*
variare, *to change.*
vehementer, *vehemently, very much.*
velit (see *volo*, p. 123).
velo-x, ōcis, *swift.*
venatĭcus, *belonging to hunting;* canis venaticus, *a sporting dog; a hound.*
venatum (supine), *a hunting.*
vendĕre (vendĭdi, vendĭtum), *to sell.*
vĕnire (vēni, ventum), *to come.*
Venus, Veněris, *Venus* (a heathen goddess).
vere, *truly.*
verēri, *to fear* (veritus sum).
verum, *but.*
verus, *true.*
vesci, *to feed upon* (abl.).
vespa, *a wasp.*
vesper (vespĕris), *the evening.*
vest-is, is, f. *a garment.*
via, *way; road.*
vici, *see* vincere.
victus, *see* vivere *or* vincere.
victĭma, *a victim.*
vict-or, ōris, *a conqueror.*
victoria, *victory.*
vict-us, ûs, *food.*
vĭdēre (vīdi, vīsum), *to see:* vidēri, *to be seen;* (or more commonly) *to seem.*
vincĕre (vīci, victum), *to conquer.*
vincŭlum, *a chain.*
vindĭcare, *to avenge.*
vinum, *wine.*
violare, *to offend-against; wrong; break* (a law).
vir, vĭri, *a man.*
vīres, G. ium, *strength.*
virt-us, ūtis, *virtue, valour.*
vis, *force, power* (acc. *vim*; abl. *vi:* plur. *vires, virium*, &c.).
vis, 2nd sing. of *volo*, irreg. verb.
vita, *life.*
vitare, *to avoid.*
vitium, *vice.*
vitreus, adj. *made of glass.*
vituperare, *to censure; find fault with.*
vivĕre (vixi, victum), *to live.*
vix, *scarcely.*
vixi, *see* vivere.
vocare, *to call, to invite.*
volo (p. 123), *am willing; wish.*
volunt-as, ātis, *will.*
volupt-as, ātis, *pleasure.*
vox, G. vōcis, *a voice.*
vuln-us, ĕris, *wound.*
vulp-es, is, *a fox.*

THE END.

GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS, ST. JOHN'S SQUARE, LONDON.

A DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

OF THE

SCHOOL SERIES

OF THE LATE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

LATIN.

Henry's First Latin Book. Twenty-first Edition. 12mo. 3*s*.

The object of this Work is to enable the youngest boys to master the principal difficulties of the Latin language by easy steps. At first only the third person singular of a few tenses of the verb, and one case of a noun are used, the dependent words in the sentence being gradually introduced. Each lesson in Grammar is followed by a Vocabulary, an Exercise in English for translation into Latin, and one in Latin for translation into English, the work thus forming an easy progressive Grammar, Exercise, and Construing Book.

Great attention has lately been given to the improvement of what may be called its mechanical parts. The Vocabularies have been much extended, and greater uniformity of reference has been secured. Every thing has been done which the long experience of the Editor, or the practice of his friends in their own schools has shown to be desirable. At the same time, no pains have been spared to do this without altering in any way the character of the work, or making it inconvenient to use it side by side with copies of earlier editions.

Supplementary Exercises to Henry's First Latin Book. By George Birkbeck Hill, B.A., Pembroke College Oxford, and one of the Head Masters of Bruce Castle School. 12mo. 2*s*.

In many Schools where "Henry's First Latin Book" is used, a want of additional Exercises has been felt. This it is now intended to supply by a little book merely supplementary, containing no new rules, and but few new words. The sentences are either modifications of those in the original work, or translations from some Latin author. By far the greater part of the phrases, in fact, have been taken from Cæsar, Cicero, Livy, and Sallust. The Exercises are numbered to correspond with those in Henry's First Latin Book, and the references given are all to the same Work.

A Second Latin Book, and Practical Grammar. Intended as a Sequel to Henry's First Latin Book. Tenth Edition. 12mo. 4*s*.

This Work is intended for pupils who are already able to *conjugate with accuracy*, and places before them longer sentences for translation, into which relative and other dependent clauses are gradually introduced. The Grammar includes a short treatise on Word-building, with the meaning of the prefixes and suffixes of verbs, substantives, and adjectives. Each Exercise is accompanied by a vocabulary, in which the principles of word-building given in the Grammar are *practically applied*.

Historiæ Antiquæ Epitome, from *Cornelius Nepos*, *Justin*, &c. With English Notes, Rules for Construing, Questions, Geographical Lists, &c. Eighth Edition. 4*s*.

This Work is an Epitome of Grecian, Persian, and Roman History, chronologically arranged. The chapters in Roman History (taken from Eutropius) are intended to be read first, being sufficiently easy for a pupil who has been through Henry's First Latin Book. Historical questions on the Different Periods with answers are added.

A First Classical Atlas, containing fifteen Maps, coloured in outline; intended as a Companion to the *Historiæ Antiquæ Epitome*. 8vo. 7*s*. 6*d*.

Eclogæ Ovidianæ, with English Notes; Part I. (from the Elegiac Poems.) Twelfth Edition. 12mo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

The notes explain the Historical and Mythological allusions, construction, &c., and point out any peculiarities in the structure of the verses. There is added a useful table of the declension of Greek Nouns, and rules for the formation of Patronymics. The great object of the notes is to teach a boy to construe not only correctly, but idiomatically, and by attending to the differences between the Latin and English modes of expressing the same thought, to gain an insight into the construction of both languages.

Eclogæ Ovidianæ; Part II. (from the Metamorphoses.) 5*s*.

In this Work each fable is presented as an independent story. The text omitted between the pieces is supplied by an English Introduction, which relates the chief points of the legend, supplies any necessary information about the characters introduced, and gives an explanation of the origin and purpose of the myth wherever it is practicable.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. Part I. Fifteenth Edition. 8vo. 6*s*. 6*d*.

The rules for the government and arrangement of words, and the Idioms of the Latin language, are given in short lessons, and illustrated by examples from the best authors: these are to be imitated in the exercises that follow, which are so arranged that the rules are impressed on the memory by *very frequent repetition*. Much attention has been paid to Synonymes and to the use of the Subjunctive in Oblique Narration, and with Relatives and Relative Adverbs. Throughout the book one object is steadily kept in view, that of making the *general construction of sentences* of more importance than the *mere government of cases*.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Part II.; containing the Doctrine of Latin Particles. Fourth Edition. 8vo. 8*s*.

This Work, which is on the same principles as Part I., but intended for more advanced pupils, explains more particularly the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence, and the nice distinctions which exist between the different adverbs and conjunctions: in illustration copious extracts are given from the best Prose authors: the sentences for translation are of considerable length: a Vocabulary, giving many English phrases idiomatically expressed in Latin, and an Antibarbarus guard against the mistakes usually made by beginners.

Cornelius Nepos, Part I.; with Critical Questions and Answers, and an imitative Exercise on each Chapter. Fifth Edition. 12mo. 4*s*.

The object of this Work is to accustom the pupil to make himself acquainted with the style of the author he is reading, and to note the peculiarities and differences of construction of Latin authors. For this purpose, questions on the arrangement and construction of sentences, and on the usage and meanings of words are given for each chapter, with answers, explanations, and parallel passages, followed by an exercise, in which the different idioms are introduced, so that they may be impressed upon the memory, and the pupil may learn to write Latin in the style of Nepos.

The Æneid of Virgil, with English Notes. 12mo. 6*s*.

Eclogæ Horatianæ, Pars I.; Carmina prope Omnia Continens. Addita est Familiaris Interpretatio ex Adnotationibus Mitscherlichii, Doeringii, Orellii, aliorum excerpta. Second Edition. 12mo. 5*s*.

The Works of Horace, followed by English Introductions and Notes, adapted for School use. 12mo. 7*s*.

A First Verse Book, Part I.; intended as an easy Introduction to the Latin Hexameter and Pentameter. Ninth Edition. 12mo. 2*s*. Part II.; containing additional Exercises. Third Edition. 1*s*.

This is both a Verse Book and also a short but complete Prosody. Each Exercise is preceded by a lesson containing rules and verses to be imitated. The great advantage of the book is that the verses are *not nonsense*, but have been carefully selected, so that they can be construed by the pupil, who thus learns from the first to avoid mixing the words of different sentences.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Verse Composition.

Fourth and cheaper Edition, considerably revised. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The pupil is here supposed to be capable of composing verses easily when the "*full sense*" is given. He is now to be assisted in proceeding to original composition in Elegiacs and Hexameters, and in mastering the Alcaic and Sapphic stanzas: explanations and a few exercises are also given on the other Horatian metres. A short Poetical Phraseology has been added.

In the present Edition the whole work has been corrected, the translations being carefully compared with the originals. The Alcaics and Sapphics have been arranged in stanzas, and each kind of verse placed in a separate chapter, the old numbers of the Exercises being preserved for convenience in use. Other improvements it is hoped will add to its value.

Gradus ad Parnassum Novus Anticlepticus; founded on Quicherat's *Thesaurus Poeticus Linguæ Latinæ.* 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.* *half-bound.*

The Gradus Novus will be found a sufficient dictionary for the best Latin Poets: words that are not actually synonymous, but nearly so, are marked in such a way as to caution the pupil to look out their meaning: the epithets are carefully selected, with a view to create a judicious use of them: and the phrases are so introduced that, whilst they add to the pupil's stock of poetical ideas, he cannot borrow ready-made verses.

*** A prospectus, with specimen page, may be had on application.

Cicero, with English Notes from the best and most recent sources.

Part I.—Selected Orations. Third Edition, carefully revised. 12mo. 4*s.*

Part II.—Selected Epistles. 5*s.*

Part III.—The Tusculan Disputations. Second Edition. 5*s.* 6*d.*

Part IV.—De Finibus Malorum et Bonorum. (On the Supreme Good.) 5*s.* 6*d.*

Part V.—Cato Major, sive De Senectute Dialogus. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The object of this Series is to give the pupil *sufficient* help, but *not too much*: the notes, which are mostly taken from the best German editions, render assistance in all the really difficult passages, and give such explanations of ancient laws and customs as may enable the pupil to understand the allusions of the author.

Tacitus, Part I. The first Six Books of the Annals of Tacitus, ab Excessu Divi Augusti. With English Notes, translated (with additions) from the German of Dr. Karl Nipperdey, by the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. 12mo. 6*s.* Part II. (Books XI.—XVI.) 5*s.*

Sallust.—The History of the Jugurthine War, explained by Rudolf Jacobs. The Notes translated (and enlarged) by the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. 12mo. 3*s*. 6*d*.

Longer Latin Exercises, Part I. Third Edition. 8vo. 4*s*.

The object of this Work is to supply boys with an easy collection of short passages as an exercise book after they have gone, *once at least*, through Part I. of the Practical Introduction. The exercises are preceded by a treatise on the order of words; and assistance is rendered by foot-notes, &c.

Longer Latin Exercises, Part II.; containing a Selection of Passages of greater length, in genuine idiomatic English, for Translation into Latin. 8vo. 4*s*.

Materials for Translation into Latin: selected and arranged by Augustus Grotefend. Translated from the German by the Rev. H. H. Arnold, B.A., with Notes and Excursuses. Third Edition. 8vo. 7*s*. 6*d*.

In this Work historical extracts and dialogues have been selected for translation, accompanied by foot-notes on the construction and words to be used. At the end are some valuable Excursuses on the Latin Adverbs, Conjunctions, Particles, &c., and on the meaning of words and distinction of Synonymes.

A Copious and Critical English-Latin Lexicon, by the Rev. T. K. Arnold and the Rev. J. E. Riddle. New Edition. 8vo. 1*l*. 1*s*.

The object of this Work is to give the student an English-Latin Lexicon of such strict accuracy that he can consult it with a reasonable hope of finding what he wants, and with the certainty of being able to trust what he finds. An account is given of the use of the words set down, of their synonymical distinctions, and of the niceties connected with their employment by Classical Writers, together with many useful remarks and cautions.

An Abridgment of the above Work, for the use of Schools. By the Rev. J. C. Ebden, late Fellow and Tutor of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. Post 8vo. 7*s*. 6*d*.

GREEK.

The First Greek Book; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." Fifth Edition. 12mo. 5*s*.

This is at once an easy Grammar, Construing, and Exercise Book: each lesson is followed by a Vocabulary and Exercises for translation into English and Greek; the rules for accentuation are gradually introduced into the lessons, so that the pupil is accustomed from *the very beginning* to write Greek words with their proper accents. About fifty pages of paradigms of declensions and conjugations (regular and irregular) are given, portions of which are to be learnt with each lesson. Syntactical rules and differences of idiom give what further assistance is required.

The Second Greek Book (on the same Plan); containing an Elementary Treatise on the Greek Particles and the Formation of Greek Derivatives. Second Edition. 12mo. *5s. 6d.*

The Third Greek Book, containing Selections from Xenophon's Cyropædia, with English Notes, and a Vocabulary. 12mo. *3s. 6d.*

The Fourth Greek Book, containing Xenophon's Anabasis, Books IV. to VII., with English Notes. 12mo. *4s.*

A Practical Introduction to Greek Accidence. With Easy Exercises and Vocabulary. Eighth Edition. 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

In each lesson of this book a portion of the Accidence is learnt and impressed upon the memory by an exercise containing numerous examples on the declensions, conjugations, and simple government of words, with which the pupil becomes familiar by *constant repetition*. In the second part, exercises are given on the verbs in μι, the contracted and irregular verbs, and on the principles of word-building; this part is preceded by a short treatise on accentuation, and the pupil is required to accentuate his Greek. The questions on the Accidence and Accentuation will be found very useful to the tutor.

A Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition. Tenth Edition. 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

The Syntax is broken up into short lessons, each followed by a Vocabulary and Exercise, and preceded by Model Sentences in Greek, containing examples of the rules, whilst each exercise contains many examples of the back rules, so that by imitation and very frequent repetition they may be thoroughly impressed upon the mind. The pupil thus gradually learns the niceties of the language, whilst one object is steadily kept in view, that of making the *general construction of sentences* of more importance than *the mere government of cases*.

A Greek Grammar; intended as a sufficient Grammar of Reference for Schools and Colleges. Second Edition. 8vo, *half-bound*. *10s. 6d.*

Professor Madvig's Syntax of the Greek Language, especially of the Attic Dialect; translated by the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. Together with an Appendix on the Greek Particles, by the Translator. Square 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

In this Manual (of study and reference), the Greek language in its most highly cultivated form, the Greek of the Athenian poets and historians, philosophers and orators, is exhibited in clear, succinct rules, copiously illustrated by apposite examples.

An Elementary Greek Grammar. 12mo. *5s.*; or, with Dialects, *6s.*

Homer for Beginners.—The First Three Books of the Iliad, with English Notes; forming a sufficient Commentary for Young Students. Third Edition. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The object of this Work is to render such assistance as will be required by the beginner. With this view the notes given in the "Critical Introduction to Homer" are simplified, and many explanations added, which would not be required by the more advanced student. Lists of words with the Digamma, of peculiar Homeric substantives and adjectives, and of Homeric adverbs and adverbial phrases, with explanations and derivations, are added.

The Iliad of Homer Complete, with English Notes and Grammatical References. Third Edition. In one thick volume, 12mo, *half-bound.* 12*s.*

The argument of each book is broken into short parts, which are inserted in the text before each paragraph, in order to give the student an idea of what follows. The notes to the first four books are abridged from Mr. Arnold's other editions of Homer, the rest are from Dübner. Lists of the Homeric substantives with peculiarities of form, of the adjectives with two forms, of the Homeric adverbs and adverbial phrases, and explanations of Homeric words by Buttmann, are given in the form of appendices.

Homer.—The Iliad, Books I. to IV.; with a Critical Introduction, and copious English Notes. Second Edition. 12mo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

The object of this Work is to assist the more advanced student to acquire a *critical knowledge* of Homer. The text of the first four books is followed by an abridgment of Thiersch's Treatise on the Language of Homer, explaining the Prosody and Versification, the use of the Augment, and peculiarities in the Homeric substantives, adjectives, and verbs. Copious critical notes are added, mostly taken from Nägelsboch, Freytag, and Crusius.

Homer.—A Complete Greek and English Lexicon for the Poems of Homer and the Homeridæ. Translated from the German of Crusius, by Professor Smith. Third Edition. 9*s.*

The object of this Work is to present in a moderate compass all that is required by the student for understanding Homer and the Homeridæ. It not only contains an alphabetical series of words, with their meanings and derivations, but particularly notices peculiarities of expression, and those passages which in point of construction or the signification of words are difficult to be understood, or admit of different interpretations: explanations are also given, wherever necessary, from Mythology, Geography, Antiquities, &c.

*** A prospectus and specimen of this Lexicon may be had.

Xenophon's Anabasis, explained by Dr. F. K. Hertlein. In Two Parts; Part II. forming the "Fourth Greek Book." Translated from the German, with additional Notes and Grammatical References, by the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. 12mo. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Herodotus.—Eclogæ Herodoteæ, Part I.; from the Text of Schweighæuser. With English Notes. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Thucydides, with copious English Notes, especially from Poppo and Krüger, and Grammatical References. Book the First. 12mo. 5*s.* 6*d.* Book the Second. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Æschines.—Speech against Ctesiphon. 12mo. 4*s.*

The object of this Book is to give a plain exposition of the sentiments of the Author, based on philological principles, and illustrated by the requisite historical and archæological information. Sufficient help is given to encourage the student's own efforts, and to furnish the means of success to the diligent and persevering.

Demosthenes, with English Notes from the best and most recent sources, Sauppe, Doberenz, Jacobs, Dissen, Westermann, &c.

The Olynthiac Orations. Third Edition. 12mo. 3*s.*
The Oration on the Crown. Second Edition. 12mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*
The Philippic Orations. Third Edition. 12mo. 4*s.*

In this Edition the introduction to each Oration supplies enough of the history of the period, and the position of political parties, for understanding its object. The notes are concise, and render all the assistance required for understanding the style and constructions peculiar to the Author; the Attic law-terms, customs and manners, words of peculiar meaning, historical and geographical allusions are fully explained. A chronological table is added of the events which occurred during the life of Demosthenes.

Sophocles, with English Notes, from Schneidewin. By the Ven. Archdeacon Paul, and the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A.

The Ajax. 3*s.*—The Philoctetes. 3*s.*—The Œdipus Tyrannus. 4*s.*—The Œdipus Coloneus. 4*s.*—The Antigone. 4*s.*

This Edition is especially adapted for schools, though it is hoped that even the finished scholar may glean from it some useful information. The notes are concise, on the principle of not giving *too much help*, yet all real difficulties of construction or expression are carefully explained, as well as any allusions to History and Mythology. The Introduction gives a complete history of the principal actors, and explains the different scenes and plot of each play, whilst its object and the date of its production are thoroughly discussed: the character of the actors is also compared with that given by other poets.

Euripides, with English Notes, from Hartung, Dübner, Witzschel, Schöne, &c.

The Hecuba.—The Hippolytus.—The Bacchæ.—The Medea.—The Iphigeniá in Tauris. 3*s. each.*

The object of this Edition is to furnish sufficient help to young scholars reading Euripides for the first time, without going too deeply into nice points of criticism; in any difficulties of construction, unusual meanings of words, allusions to History, Mythology, Geography, &c., assistance is given in the notes. An introduction is prefixed to each play, explaining the plot, characters, scenes, &c., and giving much information on points of classical interest in connexion with the play.

Aristophanes.—Eclogæ Aristophanicæ, with English Notes, by Professor Felton. Part I. (The Clouds.) 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Part II. (The Birds.) 3*s.* 6*d.*

*** *In this Edition the objectionable passages are omitted.*

A Copious Phraseological English-Greek Lexicon, founded on a Work prepared by J. W. Frädersdorff, Ph. Dr. of the Taylor-Institution, Oxford. Revised, Enlarged, and Improved by Henry Browne, M.A., Vicar of Pevensey, and Prebendary of Chichester. Fourth Edition, corrected, with the Appendix incorporated. 8vo. 21*s.*

In this Lexicon it has been endeavoured to give the equivalent Greek for all English words, with their various meanings. The grammatical construction is duly indicated, poetry discriminated from prose, synonymes distinguished, and the usage and idioms of both languages exemplified by copious phrases from named authors. It claims to be a *Lexicon* in the proper sense of the word, such that a foreigner being a good Greek scholar, could acquire from it a knowledge of English almost as complete (except for what is essentially *modern*) as would be furnished by a good English dictionary in his own language; in which, therefore, the English student may expect to find the right words and the suitable mode of expression for the thought which he wishes to render into Greek.

Classical Examination Papers. A Series of 93 Extracts from Greek, Roman, and English Classics for Translation, with occasional Questions and Notes; each extract on a separate leaf. Price of the whole in a specimen packet, 4*s.*, or six copies of any Separate Paper may be had for 3*d.*

Keys to the following may be had by Tutors only:—

First Latin Book, 1*s.* Supplementary Exercises, 1*s.* 6*d.*
Second Latin Book, 2*s.* Cornelius Nepos, 1*s.*
First Verse Book, 1*s.* Latin Verse Composition, 2*s.*
Latin Prose Composition, Parts I. and II., 1*s.* 6*d.* each.
Longer Latin Exercises, Part I., 1*s.* 6*d.* Part II., 2*s.* 6*d.*
Grotefend's Materials for Latin Translation. 4*s.*
Greek Prose Composition, Part I., 1*s.* 6*d.* Part II., 4*s.* 6*d.*
First Greek Book, 1*s.* 6*d.* Second, 2*s.*

HEBREW.

The First Hebrew Book; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." 12mo. Third Edition. 7*s*. 6*d*. Key, 3*s*. 6*d*.

In this Manual, the difficulties by which learners are most commonly deterred from the study of Hebrew are smoothed by a gradual exhibition of the facts of the language. Through a considerable part of the book the paradigms and exercises are printed both in Hebrew and English characters.

The Second Hebrew Book, containing the Book of Genesis; together with a Hebrew Syntax, and a Vocabulary and Grammatical Commentary. 9*s*.

GERMAN.

The First German Book; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." By the Rev. T. K. Arnold and Dr. Frädersdorff. Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5*s*. 6*d*. Key, 2*s*. 6*d*.

This Work (on the same plan as Henry's First Latin Book) is at once a Grammar, Exercise, and Construing Book: the pupil is led by easy steps to gain a fair knowledge of the idioms of the language, and acquires an extensive Vocabulary. It is intended especially for Classical Schools.

A Reading Companion to the First German Book; containing Extracts from the best Authors, with a Vocabulary and Notes. 12mo. Second Edition. 4*s*.

This Book contains a selection of Progressive Extracts from German Prose and Verse Authors: the pupil is assisted by foot-notes: much grammatical information and help towards idiomatic translation is given under the head of "Miscellaneous Remarks." A Dictionary is not required, the Index being quite sufficient.

The Second German Book; a Syntax, and Etymological Vocabulary, with copious Reading-Lessons and Exercises. Edited by Dr. Frädersdorff. 6*s*. 6*d*. Key, 1*s*.

FRENCH.

The First French Book; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5*s*. 6*d*. Key, 2*s*. 6*d*.

ENGLISH.

Henry's English Grammar; a Manual for Beginners. 12mo. 3*s*. 6*d*.

This Work is a manual of grammatical instruction for beginners. The lessons and exercises are formed on a method calculated to lead the pupil by sure and easy steps to a correct and intelligent use of his mother-tongue: at the same time the habit is formed of reflecting on the facts and analyzing the construction of his own language, which will greatly facilitate the acquisition of other languages, either ancient or modern.

Spelling turned Etymology. Third Edition. 12mo. 2*s.* 6*d.* The Pupil's Book. 1*s.* 3*d.*

The object of this Work is to enable a teacher of very moderate ability to train his pupils to a considerable knowledge of words; and by its use boys of no great intellectual powers may acquire an extensive Vocabulary, and be taught to use it accurately because they understand it thoroughly.

Latin viâ English; being the Second Part of the above Work. Fourth Edition. 12mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

An English Grammar for Classical Schools; being a Practical Introduction to "English Prose Composition." Ninth Edition. 12mo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

The object of this Work is to ground boys so thoroughly in the English Verb, especially in the Participles, Auxiliaries, and Participial Substantive, that they may not fall into the usual errors in translation. In the exercises the pupil learns not merely to correct errors, but to change one kind of construction into another equivalent one, which will give him a mastery over the idioms and laws of construction of his own language, and aid him in the acquisition of others.

Handbooks for the Classical Student, with Questions.

Ancient History and Geography. From the German of Pütz. Translated by the Ven. Archdeacon Paul. Second Edition. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Mediæval History and Geography. By the Same. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Modern History and Geography. By the Same. 5*s.* 6*d.*

In this Series, by the use of which the student will gain an accurate knowledge of the outlines of Universal History, Geography and Chronology take their proper places as the Handmaids of History, and inseparably connected with it. The history of each country is preceded by a Geographical view of it, arranged (1) physically, (2) politically. The Ancient History extends from the earliest period of which we have any notice, to the dissolution of the Western Empire, A.D. 476: the Mediæval History, to the discovery of America, A.D. 1492: the Modern History to the present day. A Chronological table and complete set of Historical and Geographical questions are added to each volume.

The Athenian Stage, from the German of Witzschel. Translated by the Ven. Archdeacon Paul. 4*s.*

Grecian Antiquities. From the Swedish of Bojesen. Translated from Dr. Hoffa's German version by the Ven. Archdeacon Paul. Second Edition. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Roman Antiquities. By the Same. Second Edition. 3*s*. 6*d*.

The object of these Works is, by a simple and systematic arrangement, to present to the reader a clear representation of Grecian and Roman life. The recent investigations of jurists and philologists have been extensively but carefully used, and the book is so arranged that the parts, instead of being in the form of a Dictionary, follow in the order in which they ought to be studied, and in which they can be most readily *got up* and *retained*. A complete set of questions is added to each.

Hebrew Antiquities. By the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. 4*s*.

This Work describes the manners and customs of the ancient Hebrews which were common to them with other nations, and the rites and ordinances which distinguished them as the chosen people Israel. It may be used as a Sunday lesson book in Schools and Families.

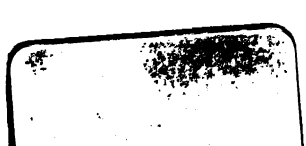
Latin Synonymes. From the German of Döderlein. Third Edition. 4*s*.

Greek Synonymes. From the French of Pillon. 6*s*. 6*d*.

This Work comprehends all words in the Greek language, whether poetical or not, that have a common or closely relative meaning, not excluding even the ἅπαξ λεγόμενα. The differences in meaning are carefully pointed out, and passages quoted in illustration, so that the student may acquire an intimate knowledge of the language, and learn to write with force and elegance.

Messrs. Rivington's School Catalogue may be had Gratis and Post-free on application.

RIVINGTONS,

WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON;

HIGH STREET, OXFORD; TRINITY STREET, CAMBRIDG